

# The Project Gutenberg eBook of Anglo-Saxon Grammar and Exercise Book, by C. Alphonso Smith

This ebook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this ebook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you'll have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

**Title:** Anglo-Saxon Grammar and Exercise Book

**Author:** C. Alphonso Smith

**Release Date:** February 15, 2010 [EBook #31277]

**Language:** English

**Credits:** Produced by Louise Hope, Barbara Tozier, Bill Tozier and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <https://www.pgdp.net>

\*\*\* START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK \*\*\*

This text includes characters that require UTF-8 (Unicode) file encoding:

Āā Ēē Īī Ōō Ūū; ȳ Ææ (vowels with macron or "long" mark)  
Ęę Qq (e and o with ogonek)

If any of these characters do not display properly—in particular, if the diacritic does not appear directly above the letter—or if the apostrophes and quotation marks in this paragraph appear as garbage, you may have an incompatible browser or unavailable fonts. First, make sure that the browser's "character set" or "file encoding" is set to Unicode (UTF-8). You may also need to change your browser's default font.

See the [Poetry](#) section for potential problems specific to that section.

In references to numbered Sections, "Note" may mean either an inset Note or a footnote. Links in this e-text lead to the beginning of the section.

In the prose reading selections (pages 99-121), the original line breaks have been preserved for use with the linenotes and Glossary. In the verse selections, line numbers in the notes have been replaced with the line numbers from the original texts, printed in brackets as shown. In both, annotated passages are linked to their Notes; these links are intended to be unobtrusive. The distinction between linenotes and numbered footnotes is in the original.

All brackets [ ] and asterisks \* are in the original, as are the < and > symbols.

[Contents](#)  
[Grammar and Exercises](#)  
[Reading Selections:](#)  
[Prose, Poetry](#)  
[Glossary](#)

## ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK

WITH INFLECTIONS, SYNTAX, SELECTIONS  
FOR READING, AND GLOSSARY

BY

C. ALPHONSO SMITH, PH.D., LL.D.

LATE PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN THE  
UNITED STATES NAVAL ACADEMY

—••••—

ALLYN AND BACON  
BOSTON          NEW YORK          CHICAGO  
ATLANTA          SAN FRANCISCO

---

COPYRIGHT, 1896, BY  
C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

IAI

Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co.—Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

---

## PREFACE.

iii

—••••—

THE scope of this book is indicated in § 5. It is intended for beginners, and in writing it, these words of Sir Thomas Elyot have not been forgotten: "Grammer, beinge but an introduction to the understandinge of autors, if it be made to longe or exquisite to the lerner, it in a maner mortifieth his corage: And by that time he cometh to the most swete and pleasant redinge of olde autors, the sparkes of fervent desire of lernynge are extincte with the burdone of grammer, lyke as a lyttell fyre is sone quenched with a great heape of small stickes."—*The Governour*, Cap. X.

Only the essentials, therefore, are treated in this work, which is planned more as a foundation for the study of Modern English grammar, of historical English grammar, and of the principles of English etymology, than as a general introduction to Germanic philology.

The Exercises in translation will, it is believed, furnish all the drill necessary to enable the student to retain the forms and constructions given in the various chapters.

The Selections for Reading relate to the history and literature of King Alfred's day, and are sufficient to give the student a first-hand, though brief, acquaintance with the native style and idiom of Early West Saxon prose in its golden age. Most of the words and constructions contained in them will be already familiar to the student through their intentional employment in the Exercises.

For the inflectional portion of this grammar, recourse has been had chiefly to Sievers' *Abriss der angelsächsischen Grammatik* (1895). Constant reference has been made also to the same author's earlier and larger *Angelsächsische Grammatik*, translated by Cook. A more sparing use has been made of Cosijn's *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*.

iv

For syntax and illustrative sentences, Dr. J. E. Wülfing's *Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen, Part I.* (Bonn, 1894) has proved indispensable. Advance sheets of the second part of this great work lead one to believe that when completed the three parts will constitute the most important contribution to the study of English syntax that has yet been made. Old English sentences have also been cited from Sweet's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, Bright's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, and Cook's *First Book in Old English*.

The short chapter on the Order of Words has been condensed from my *Order of Words in Anglo-*

Though assuming sole responsibility for everything contained in this book, I take pleasure in acknowledging the kind and efficient assistance that has been so generously given me in its preparation. To none do I owe more than to Dr. J. E. Wülfing, of the University of Bonn; Prof. James A. Harrison, of the University of Virginia; Prof. W. S. Currell, of Washington and Lee University; Prof. J. Douglas Bruce, of Bryn Mawr College; and Prof. L. M. Harris, of the University of Indiana. They have each rendered material aid, not only in the tedious task of detecting typographical errors in the proof-sheets, but by the valuable criticisms and suggestions which they have made as this work was passing through the press.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY,  
BATON ROUGE, September, 1896.

v

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.



IN preparing this enlarged edition, a few minor errors in the first edition have been corrected and a few sentences added. The chief difference between the two editions, however, consists in the introduction of more reading matter and the consequent exposition of Old English meter. Both changes have been made at the persistent request of teachers and students of Old English.

Uniformity of treatment has been studiously preserved in the new material and the old, the emphasis in both being placed on syntax and upon the affinities that Old English shares with Modern English.

Many obligations have been incurred in preparing this augmented edition. I have again to thank Dr. J. E. Wülfing, Prof. James A. Harrison, Prof. W. S. Currell, and Prof. J. Douglas Bruce. To the scholarly criticisms also of Prof. J. M. Hart, of Cornell; Prof. Frank Jewett Mather, Jr., of Williams College; and Prof. Frederick Tupper, Jr., of the University of Vermont, I am indebted for aid as generously given as it is genuinely appreciated.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

August, 1898.

vi

## PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.



AMONG those who have kindly aided in making this edition free from error, I wish to thank especially my friend Dr. John M. McBryde, Jr., of Hollins Institute, Virginia.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA,  
Chapel Hill, February, 1903.

vii

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.



### PART I.—INTRODUCTION.

Chapters	Pages
I. History (§ 1-5) . . . . .	1
II. Sounds (§ 6-11) . . . . .	4
III. Inflections (§ 12-19) . . . . .	10
IV. Order of Words (§ 20-21) . . . . .	18
V. Practical Suggestions (§ 22-24) . . . . .	21

### PART II.—ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

VI. The <b>a</b> -Declension: Masculine <b>a</b> -Stems (§ 25-30) . . . . .	27
VII. Neuter <b>a</b> -Stems (§ 31-36) . . . . .	30
VIII. The <b>ō</b> -Declension (§ 37-42) . . . . .	33
IX. The <b>i</b> -Declension and the <b>u</b> -Declension (§ 43-55) . . . . .	35

X.	Present Indicative Endings of Strong Verbs (§ 56-62)	39
XI.	The Weak or <b>n</b> -Declension (§ 63-66)	44
XII.	Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions (§ 67-71)	47
XIII.	Pronouns (§ 72-77)	50
XIV.	Adjectives, Strong and Weak (§ 78-87)	53
XV.	Numerals (§ 88-92)	57
XVI.	Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions (§ 93-95)	60
XVII.	Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (§ 96-100)	64
XVIII.	Strong Verbs: Class I, Syntax of Moods (§ 101-108)	68
XIX.	Classes II and III (§ 109-113)	74
XX.	Classes IV, V, VI, and VII; Contract Verbs (§ 114-121)	78
XXI.	Weak Verbs (§ 122-133)	82
XXII.	Remaining Verbs; Verb Phrases with <b>habban</b> , <b>bēon</b> , and <b>weorðan</b> (§ 134-143)	90

## PART III.—SELECTIONS FOR READING.

## PROSE.

	Introductory	98
I.	The Battle of Ashdown	99
II.	A Prayer of King Alfred	101
III.	The Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan	102
	Ohthere's First Voyage	103
	Ohthere's Second Voyage	106
	Wulfstan's Voyage	107
IV.	The Story of Cædmon	111
V.	Alfred's Preface to the Pastoral Care	116

## POETRY.

	Introductory	122
VI.	Extracts from Beowulf	136
VII.	The Wanderer	148

## GLOSSARIES.

I.	Old English—Modern English	155
II.	Modern English—Old English	190

# OLD ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES

## OLD ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK.

---

### PART I.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

# CHAPTER I.

## HISTORY.

1. The history of the English language falls naturally into three periods; but these periods blend into one another so gradually that too much significance must not be attached to the exact dates which scholars, chiefly for convenience of treatment, have assigned as their limits. Our language, it is true, has undergone many and great changes; but its continuity has never been broken, and its individuality has never been lost.

2. The first of these periods is that of OLD ENGLISH, or ANGLO-SAXON, <sup>1</sup> commonly known as the period of *full inflections*. *E.g.* **stān-as**, *stones*; **car-u**, *care*; **will-a**, *will*; **bind-an**, *to bind*; **help-að** (= **ath**), *they help*.

2

It extends from the arrival of the English in Great Britain to about one hundred years after the Norman Conquest,—from A.D. 449 to 1150; but there are no literary remains of the earlier centuries of this period. There were four <sup>2</sup> distinct dialects spoken at this time. These were the Northumbrian, spoken north of the river Humber; the Mercian, spoken in the midland region between the Humber and the Thames; the West Saxon, spoken south and west of the Thames; and the Kentish, spoken in the neighborhood of Canterbury. Of these dialects, Modern English is most nearly akin to the Mercian; but the best known of them is the West Saxon. It was in the West Saxon dialect that King Alfred (849-901) wrote and spoke. His writings belong to the period of Early West Saxon as distinguished from the period of Late West Saxon, the latter being best represented in the writings of Abbot Ælfric (955?-1025?).

3. The second period is that of MIDDLE ENGLISH, or the period of *leveled inflections*, the dominant vowel of the inflections being **e**. *E.g.* **ston-es**, **car-e**, **will-e**, **bind-en** (or **bind-e**), **help-eth**, each being, as in the earlier period, a dissyllable.

The Middle English period extends from A.D. 1150 to 1500. Its greatest representatives are Chaucer (1340-1400) in poetry and Wiclif (1324-1384) in prose. There were three prominent dialects during this period: the Northern, corresponding to the older Northumbrian; the Midland (divided into East Midland and West Midland), corresponding to the Mercian; and the Southern, corresponding to the West Saxon and Kentish. London, situated in East Midland territory, had become the dominant speech center; and it was this East Midland dialect that both Chaucer and Wiclif employed.

3

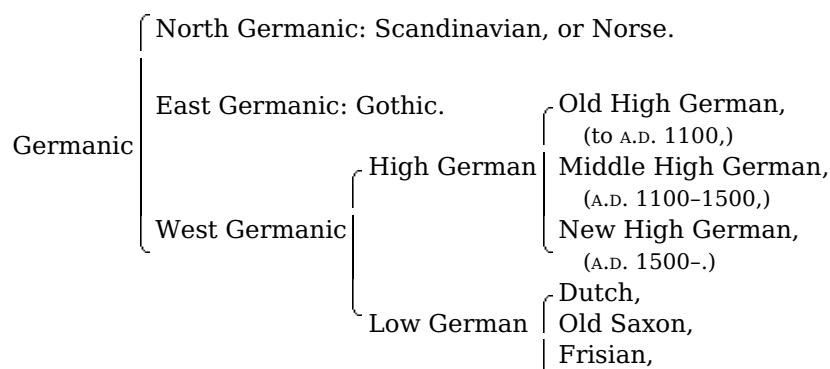
NOTE.—It is a great mistake to think that Chaucer shaped our language from crude materials. His influence was conservative, not plastic. The popularity of his works tended to crystalize and thus to perpetuate the forms of the East Midland dialect, but that dialect was ready to his hand before he began to write. The speech of London was, in Chaucer's time, a mixture of Southern and Midland forms, but the Southern forms (survivals of the West Saxon dialect) had already begun to fall away; and this they continued to do, so that "Chaucer's language," as Dr. Murray says, "is more Southern than standard English eventually became." See also Morsbach, *Ueber den Ursprung der neuenglischen Schriftsprache* (1888).

4. The last period is that of MODERN ENGLISH, or the period of *lost inflections*. *E.g.* *stones*, *care*, *will*, *bind*, *help*, each being a monosyllable. Modern English extends from A.D. 1500 to the present time. It has witnessed comparatively few grammatical changes, but the vocabulary of our language has been vastly increased by additions from the classical languages. Vowels, too, have shifted their values.

5. It is the object of this book to give an elementary knowledge of Early West Saxon, that is, the language of King Alfred. With this knowledge, it will not be difficult for the student to read Late West Saxon, or any other dialect of the Old English period. Such knowledge will also serve as the best introduction to the structure both of Middle English and of Modern English, besides laying a secure foundation for the scientific study of any other Germanic tongue.

NOTE.—The Germanic, or Teutonic, languages constitute a branch of the great Aryan, or Indo-Germanic (known also as the Indo-European) group. They are subdivided as follows:

4



1. This unfortunate nomenclature is due to the term *Angli Saxones*, which Latin writers used as a designation for the English Saxons as distinguished from the continental or Old Saxons. But Alfred and Ælfric both use the term *Englisc*, not Anglo-Saxon. The Angles spread over Northumbria and Mercia, far outnumbering the other tribes. Thus *Englisc* (= *Angel* + *isc*) became the general name for the language spoken.
2. As small as England is, there are six distinct dialects spoken in her borders to-day. Of these the Yorkshire dialect is, perhaps, the most peculiar. It preserves many Northumbrian survivals. See Tennyson's *Northern Farmer*.

## CHAPTER II. SOUNDS.

### Vowels and Diphthongs.

6. The long vowels and diphthongs will in this book be designated by the macron (—). Vowel length should in every case be associated by the student with each word learned: quantity alone sometimes distinguishes words meaning wholly different things: **fōr**, *he went*, **for**, *for*; **gōd**, *good*, **God**, *God*; **mān**, *crime*, **man**, *man*.

Long vowels and diphthongs:

- ā** as in *father*: **stān**, *a stone*.
- ǣ** as in *man* (prolonged): **slǣpan**, *to sleep*.
- ē** as in *they*: **hēr**, *here*.
- ī** as in *machine*: **mīn**, *mine*.
- ō** as in *note* (pure, not diphthongal): **bōc**, *book*.
- ū** as in *rule*: **tūn**, *town*.
- ȳ** as in German *grün*, or English *green* (with lips rounded): <sup>1</sup> **brȳd**, *bride*.

The diphthongs, long and short, have the stress upon the first vowel. The second vowel is obscured, and represents approximately the sound of *er* in *sooner*, *faster* (= *soon-uh*, *fast-uh*). The long diphthongs (**ǣ** is not a diphthong proper) are **ēo**, **ie**, and **ēa**. The sound of **ēo** is approximately reproduced in *mayor* (= *mā-uh*); that of **ie** in the dissyllabic pronunciation of *fear* (= *fē-uh*). But **ēa** = *ǣ-uh*. This diphthong is hardly to be distinguished from *ea* in *pear*, *bear*, etc., as pronounced in the southern section of the United States (= *bæ-uh*, *pæ-uh*).

7. The short sounds are nothing more than the long vowels and diphthongs shortened; but the student must at once rid himself of the idea that Modern English *red*, for example, is the shortened form of *reed*, or that *mat* is the shortened form of *mate*. Pronounce these long sounds with increasing rapidity, and *reed* will approach *rid*, while *mate* will approach *met*. The Old English short vowel sounds are:

- a** as in *artistic*: **habban**, *to have*.
- æ** as in *mankind*: **dæg**, *day*.
- e, ę** as in *let*: **stelan**, *to steal*, **settan**, *to set*.
- i** as in *sit*: **hit**, *it*.
- o** as in *broad* (but shorter): **God**, *God*.
- o** as in *not*: **lomb**, *lamb*.
- u** as in *full*: **sunu**, *son*.
- y** as in *miller* (with lips rounded) <sup>1</sup>: **gylden**, *golden*.

NOTE.—The symbol **ę** is known as *umlaut-e* (§ 58). It stands for Germanic *a*, while **e** (without the cedilla) represents Germanic *e*. The symbol **o** is employed only before **m** and **n**. It, too, represents Germanic *a*. But Alfred writes **manig** or **monig**, *many*; **lamb** or **lomb**, *lamb*; **hand** or **hond**, *hand*, etc. The cedilla is an etymological sign added by modern grammarians.

The letters ę and o were printed as shown in this e-text. The diacritic is not a cedilla (open to the left) but an ogonek (open to the right).

### Consonants.

8. There is little difference between the values of Old English consonants and those of Modern English. The following distinctions, however, require notice:

The digraph **th** is represented in Old English texts by **ð** and **þ**, no consistent distinction being made between them. In the works of Alfred, **ð** (capital, **Ð**) is the more common: **ðās**, *those*; **ðæt**, *that*; **bindeð**, *he binds*.

The consonant **c** had the hard sound of *k*, the latter symbol being rare in West Saxon: **cyning**, *king*; **cwēn**, *queen*; **cūð**, *known*. When followed by a palatal vowel sound,—*e*, *i*, *æ*, *ea*, *eo*, long or short,—a vanishing *y* sound was doubtless interposed (*cf.* dialectic *kʸind* for *kind*). In Modern

English the combination has passed into *ch*: **cealc**, *chalk*; **cīdan**, *to chide*; **lāce**, *leech*; **cild**, *child*; **cēowan**, *to chew*. This change (*c > ch*) is known as Palatalization. The letter **g**, pronounced as in Modern English *gun*, has also a palatal value before the palatal vowels (*cf.* dialectic *g'irl* for *girl*).

The combination **cg**, which frequently stands for **gg**, had probably the sound of *dge* in Modern English *edge*: **ecg**, *edge*; **secgan**, *to say*; **brycg**, *bridge*. Initial **h** is sounded as in Modern English: **habban**, *to have*; **hālga**, *saint*. When closing a syllable it has the sound of German *ch*: **slōh**, *he slew*; **hēah**, *high*; **ðurh**, *through*.

9. An important distinction is that between voiced (or sonant) and voiceless (or surd) consonants.<sup>2</sup> In Old English they are as follows:

VOICED.	VOICELESS.
<b>g</b>	<b>h, c</b>
<b>d</b>	<b>t</b>
<b>ð, þ</b> (as in <i>though</i> )	<b>ð, þ</b> (as in <i>thin</i> )
<b>b</b>	<b>p</b>
<b>f</b> (= <i>v</i> )	<b>f</b>
<b>s</b> (= <i>z</i> )	<b>s</b>

It is evident, therefore, that **ð** (**þ**), **f**, and **s** have double values in Old English. If voiced, they are equivalent to *th* (in *though*), *v*, and *z*. Otherwise, they are pronounced as *th* (in *thin*), *f* (in *fin*), and *s* (in *sin*). The syllabic environment will usually compel the student to give these letters their proper values. When occurring between vowels, they are always voiced: **ōðer**, *other*; **ofer**, *over*; **rīsan**, *to rise*.

NOTE.—The general rule in Old English, as in Modern English, is, that voiced consonants have a special affinity for other voiced consonants, and voiceless for voiceless. This is the law of Assimilation. Thus when *de* is added to form the preterit of a verb whose stem ends in a voiceless consonant, the **d** is unvoiced, or assimilated, to **t**: **settan**, *to set*, **sette** (but **treddan**, *to tread*, has **trēdde**); **slēpan**, *to sleep*, **slēpte**; **drēncan**, *to drench*, **drēncte**; **cyssan**, *to kiss*, **cyste**. See § 126, Note 1.

### Syllables.

10. A syllable is usually a vowel, either alone or in combination with consonants, uttered with a single impulse of stress; but certain consonants may form syllables: *oven* (= *ov-n*), *battle* (= *bæt-l*); (*cf.* also the vulgar pronunciation of *elm*).

A syllable may be (1) weak or strong, (2) open or closed, (3) long or short.

(1) A weak syllable receives a light stress. Its vowel sound is often different from that of the corresponding strong, or stressed, syllable. *Cf.* weak and strong *my* in "I want my *lárge* hat" and "I want *mý* hat."

(2) An open syllable ends in a vowel or diphthong: **dē-man**, *to deem*; **ðū**, *thou*; **sca-can**, *to shake*; **dæ-ges**, *by day*. A closed syllable ends in one or more consonants: **ðing**, *thing*; **gōd**, *good*; **glæd**, *glad*.

(3) A syllable is long (*a*) if it contains a long vowel or a long diphthong: **drī-fan**, *to drive*; **lū-can**, *to lock*; **slā-pan**, *to sleep*; **cēo-san**, *to choose*; (*b*) if its vowel or diphthong is followed by more than one consonant:<sup>3</sup> **cræft**, *strength*; **heard**, *hard*; **lib-ban**, *to live*; **feal-lan**, *to fall*. Otherwise, the syllable is short: **ðe**, *which*; **be-ran**, *to bear*; **ðæt**, *that*; **gie-fan**, *to give*.

NOTE 1.—A single consonant belongs to the following syllable: **hā-lig**, *holy* (not **hāl-ig**); **wrī-tan**, *to write*; **fæ-der**, *father*.

NOTE 2.—The student will notice that the syllable may be long and the vowel short; but the vowel cannot be long and the syllable short.

NOTE 3.—Old English short vowels, occurring in open syllables, have regularly become long in Modern English: **we-fan**, *to weave*; **e-tan**, *to eat*; **ma-cian**, *to make*; **na-cod**, *naked*; **a-can**, *to ache*; **o-fer**, *over*. And Old English long vowels, preceding two or more consonants, have generally been shortened: **brēost**, *breast*; **hælō**, *health*; **slēpte**, *slept*; **lædde**, *led*.

### Accentuation.

11. The accent in Old English falls usually on the radical syllable, never on the inflectional ending: **bríngan**, *to bring*; **stānas**, *stones*; **bérende**, *bearing*; **ídelnes**, *idleness*; **fréondscipe**, *friendship*.

But in the case of compound nouns, adjectives, and adverbs the first member of the compound (unless it be **ge-** or **be-**) receives the stronger stress: **héofon-ríce**, *heaven-kingdom*; **ōnd-giet**, *intelligence*; **sōð-fæst**, *truthful*; **gód-cund**, *divine*; **éall-unga**, *entirely*; **blīðe-líce**, *blithely*. But **be-hāt**, *promise*; **ge-béd**, *prayer*; **ge-féalic**, *joyous*; **be-sōne**, *immediately*.

Compound verbs, however, have the stress on the radical syllable: **for-gíefan**, *to forgive*; **of-línnan**, *to cease*; **ā-cnāwan**, *to know*; **wið-stóndan**, *to withstand*; **on-sácan**, *to resist*.

NOTE.—The tendency of nouns to take the stress on the prefix, while verbs retain it on the root, is

exemplified in many Modern English words: *préference*, *prefér*; *cóntract* (noun), *contráct* (verb); *ábstinence*, *abstain*; *pérfume* (noun), *perfúme* (verb).

1. Vowels are said to be round, or rounded, when the lip-opening is rounded; that is, when the lips are thrust out and puckered as if preparing to pronounce *w*. Thus *o* and *u* are round vowels: add *-ing* to each, and phonetically you have added *-wing*. E.g. *go<sup>w</sup>ing*, *su<sup>w</sup>ing*.
2. A little practice will enable the student to see the appropriateness of calling these consonants voiced and voiceless. Try to pronounce a voiced consonant,—*d* in *den*, for example, but without the assistance of *en*,—and there will be heard a gurgle, or *vocal* murmur. But in *t*, of *ten*, there is no sound at all, but only a feeling of tension in the organs.
3. Taken separately, every syllable ending in a single consonant is long. It may be said, therefore, that all closed syllables are long; but in the natural flow of language, the single final consonant of a syllable so often blends with a following initial vowel, the syllable thus becoming open and short, that such syllables are not recognized as prevailing long. Cf. Modern English *at all* (= *a-tall*).



## CHAPTER III.

### INFLECTIONS.

#### Cases.

12. There are five cases in Old English: the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the instrumental. <sup>1</sup> Each of them, except the nominative, may be governed by prepositions. When used without prepositions, they have, in general, the following functions:

- (a) The nominative, as in Modern English, is the case of the subject of a finite verb.
- (b) The genitive (the possessive case of Modern English) is the case of the possessor or source. It may be called the *of* case.
- (c) The dative is the case of the indirect object. It may be called the *to* or *for* case.
- (d) The accusative (the objective case of Modern English) is the case of the direct object.
- (e) The instrumental, which rarely differs from the dative in form, is the case of the means or the method. It may be called the *with* or *by* case.

The following paradigm of **mūð**, *the mouth*, illustrates the several cases (the article being, for the present, gratuitously added in the Modern English equivalents):

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <b>mūð</b> = <i>the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-as</b> = <i>the mouths</i> .
G. <b>mūð-es</b> <sup>2</sup> = <i>of the mouth</i> (= <i>the mouth's</i> ).	<b>mūð-a</b> = <i>of the mouths</i> (= <i>the mouths'</i> ).
D. <b>mūð-e</b> = <i>to or for the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-um</b> = <i>to or for the mouths</i> .
A. <b>mūð</b> = <i>the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-as</b> = <i>the mouths</i> .
I. <b>mūðe</b> = <i>with or by means of the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-um</b> = <i>with or by means of the mouths</i> .

#### Gender.

13. The gender of Old English nouns, unlike that of Modern English, depends partly on meaning and partly on form, or ending. Thus **mūð**, *mouth*, is masculine; **tunge**, *tongue*, feminine; **ēage**, *eye*, neuter.

No very comprehensive rules, therefore, can be given; but the gender of every noun should be learned with its meaning. Gender will be indicated in the vocabularies by the different gender forms of the definite article, **sē** for the masculine, **sēo** for the feminine, and **ðæt** for the neuter: **sē mūð**, **sēo tunge**, **ðæt ēage** = *the mouth*, *the tongue*, *the eye*.

All nouns ending in **-dōm**, **-hād**, **-scipe**, or **-ere** are masculine (cf. Modern English *wisdom*, *childhood*, *friendship*, *worker*). Masculine, also, are nouns ending in **-a**.

Those ending in **-nes** or **-ung** are feminine (cf. Modern English *goodness*, and gerundial forms in *-ing*: *seeing* is *believing*).

Thus **sē wīsdōm**, *wisdom*; **sē cildhād**, *childhood*; **sē frēondscipe**, *friendship*; **sē fiscere**, *fisher(man)*; **sē hunta**, *hunter*; **sēo gelīcnes**, *likeness*; **sēo leorning**, *learning*.

#### Declensions.

14. There are two great systems of declension in Old English, the Vowel Declension and the Consonant Declension. A noun is said to belong to the Vowel Declension when the final letter of its stem is a vowel, this vowel being then known as the *stem-characteristic*; but if the stem-characteristic is a consonant, the noun belongs to the Consonant Declension. There might have been, therefore, as many subdivisions of the Vowel Declension in Old English as there were



vowels, and as many subdivisions of the Consonant Declension as there were consonants. All Old English nouns, however, belonging to the Vowel Declension, ended their stems originally in **a**, **ō**, **i**, or **u**. Hence there are but four subdivisions of the Vowel Declension: **a**-stems, **ō**-stems, **i**-stems, and **u**-stems.

The Vowel Declension is commonly called the Strong Declension, and its nouns Strong Nouns.

NOTE.—The terms Strong and Weak were first used by Jacob Grimm (1785-1863) in the terminology of verbs, and thence transferred to nouns and adjectives. By a Strong Verb, Grimm meant one that could form its preterit out of its own resources; that is, without calling in the aid of an additional syllable: Modern English *run, ran; find, found*; but verbs of the Weak Conjugation had to borrow, as it were, an inflectional syllable: *gain, gained; help, helped*.

15. The stems of nouns belonging to the Consonant Declension ended, with but few exceptions, in the letter **n** (cf. Latin *homin-em, ration-em*, Greek ποιέμ-α). They are called, therefore, **n**-stems, the Declension itself being known as the **n**-Declension, or the Weak Declension. The nouns, also, are called Weak Nouns.

16. If every Old English noun had preserved the original Germanic stem-characteristic (or final letter of the stem), there would be no difficulty in deciding at once whether any given noun is an **a**-stem, **ō**-stem, **i**-stem, **u**-stem, or **n**-stem; but these final letters had, for the most part, either been dropped, or fused with the case-endings, long before the period of historic Old English. It is only, therefore, by a rigid comparison of the Germanic languages with one another, and with the other Aryan languages, that scholars are able to reconstruct a single Germanic language, in which the original stem-characteristics may be seen far better than in any one historic branch of the Germanic group (§ 5, Note).

This hypothetical language, which bears the same ancestral relation to the historic Germanic dialects that Latin bears to the Romance tongues, is known simply as *Germanic* (Gmc.), or as *Primitive Germanic*. Ability to reconstruct Germanic forms is not expected of the students of this book, but the following table should be examined as illustrating the basis of distinction among the several Old English declensions (O.E. = Old English, Mn.E. = Modern English):

I. Strong or Vowel Declensions	{	(1) <b>a</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>staina-z</i> , O.E. <b>stān</b> , Mn.E. <i>stone</i> .	
		(2) <b>ō</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>hallō</i> , O.E. <b>heall</b> , Mn.E. <i>hall</i> .	
		(3) <b>i</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>bōni-z</i> , O.E. <b>bēn</b> , Mn.E. <i>boon</i> .	
		(4) <b>u</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>sunu-z</i> , O.E. <b>sunu</b> , Mn.E. <i>son</i> .	
II. Consonant Declensions	{	(1) <b>n</b> -stems (Weak Declension)	{	Gmc. <i>tungōn-iz</i> , O.E. <b>tung-an</b> , Mn.E. <i>tongue-s</i> .	
		(2) Remnants of other Consonant Declensions	{	(a) {	Gmc. <i>fōt-iz</i> , O.E. <b>fēt</b> , Mn.E. <i>feet</i> .
				(b) {	Gmc. <i>frijōnd-iz</i> , O.E. <b>friend</b> , Mn.E. <i>friend-s</i> .
				(c) {	Gmc. <i>brōðr-iz</i> , O.E. <b>brōðor</b> , Mn.E. <i>brother-s</i> .

NOTE.—“It will be seen that if Old English **ēage**, *eye*, is said to be an **n**-stem, what is meant is this, that at some former period the kernel of the word ended in **-n**, while, as far as the Old English language proper is concerned, all that is implied is that the word is inflected in a certain manner.” (Jespersen, *Progress in Language*, § 109).

This is true of all Old English stems, whether Vowel or Consonant. The division, therefore, into **a**-stems, **ō**-stems, etc., is made in the interests of grammar as well as of philology.

### Conjugations.

17. There are, likewise, two systems of conjugation in Old English: the Strong or Old Conjugation, and the Weak or New Conjugation.

The verbs of the Strong Conjugation (the so-called Irregular Verbs of Modern English) number about three hundred, of which not one hundred remain in Modern English (§ 101, Note). They form their preterit and frequently their past participle by changing the radical vowel of the present stem. This vowel change or modification is called *ablaut* (pronounced *áhp-lowt*): Modern English *sing, sang, sung; rise, rose, risen*. As the radical vowel of the preterit plural is often

different from that of the preterit singular, there are four *principal parts* or *tense stems* in an Old English strong verb, instead of the three of Modern English. The four principal parts in the conjugation of a strong verb are (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative singular, (3) the preterit indicative plural, and (4) the past participle.

Strong verbs fall into seven groups, illustrated in the following table:

PRESENT.	PRET. SING.	PRET. PLUR.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
I. <b>Bitan</b> , to bite: <b>Ic bit-e</b> , I bite or shall bite. <sup>3</sup>	<b>Ic bāt</b> , I bit.	<b>Wē bit-on</b> , we bit.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge<sup>4</sup>-biten</b> , I have bitten.
II. <b>Bēodan</b> , to bid: <b>Ic bēod-e</b> , I bid or shall bid.	<b>Ic bēad</b> , I bade.	<b>Wē bud-on</b> , we bade.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-boden</b> , I have bidden.
III. <b>Bindan</b> , to bind: <b>Ic bind-e</b> , I bind or shall bind.	<b>Ic bōnd</b> , I bound.	<b>Wē bund-on</b> , we bound.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-bund-en</b> , I have bound.
IV. <b>Beran</b> , to bear: <b>Ic ber-e</b> , I bear or shall bear.	<b>Ic bær</b> , I bore.	<b>Wē bær-on</b> , we bore.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-bor-en</b> , I have borne.
V. <b>Metan</b> , to measure: <b>Ic met-e</b> , I measure or shall measure.	<b>Ic mæt</b> , I measured.	<b>Wē mæt-on</b> , we measured.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-met-en</b> , I have measured.
VI. <b>Faran</b> , to go: <b>Ic far-e</b> , I go or shall go.	<b>Ic fōr</b> , I went.	<b>Wē fōr-on</b> , we went.	<b>Ic eom<sup>5</sup> ge-far-en</b> , I have (am) gone.
VII. <b>Feallan</b> , to fall: <b>Ic feall-e</b> , I fall or shall fall.	<b>Ic fēoll</b> , I fell.	<b>Wē fēoll-on</b> , we fell.	<b>Ic eom<sup>5</sup> ge-feall-en</b> , I have (am) fallen.

16

18. The verbs of the Weak Conjugation (the so-called Regular Verbs of Modern English) form their preterit and past participle by adding to the present stem a suffix<sup>6</sup> with *d* or *t*: Modern English *love*, *loved*; *sleep*, *slept*.

17

The stem of the preterit plural is never different from the stem of the preterit singular; hence these verbs have only three distinctive tense-stems, or principal parts: *viz.*, (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative, and (3) the past participle.

Weak verbs fall into three groups, illustrated in the following table:

PRESENT.	PRETERIT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
I. <b>Frēmman</b> , to perform: <b>Ic frēm-m-e</b> , I perform or shall perform.	<b>Ic frēm-ede</b> , I performed.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-frēm-ed</b> , I have performed.
II. <b>Bodian</b> , to proclaim: <b>Ic bodi-e</b> , I proclaim or shall proclaim.	<b>Ic bod-ode</b> , I proclaimed.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-bod-od</b> , I have proclaimed.
III. <b>Habban</b> , to have: <b>Ic hæbbe</b> , I have or shall have.	<b>Ic hæf-de</b> , I had.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-hæf-d</b> , I have had.

19. There remain a few verbs (chiefly the Auxiliary Verbs of Modern English) that do not belong entirely to either of the two conjugations mentioned. The most important of them are, **Ic mæg** I may, **Ic mihte** I might; **Ic cōn** I can, **Ic cūðe** I could; **Ic mōt** I must, **Ic mōste** I must; **Ic sceal** I shall, **Ic sceolde** I should; **Ic eom** I am, **Ic wæs** I was; **Ic wille** I will, **Ic wolde** I would; **Ic dō** I do, **Ic dyde** I did; **Ic gā** I go, **Ic ēode** I went.

18

All but the last four of these are known as Preterit-Present Verbs. The present tense of each of them is *in origin* a preterit, *in function* a present. Cf. Modern English *ought* (= *owed*).

1. Most grammars add a sixth case, the vocative. But it seems best to consider the vocative as only a *function* of the nominative *form*.
2. Of course our "apostrophe and *s*" (= 's) comes from the Old English genitive ending **-es**. The *e* is preserved in *Wednesday* (= Old English **Wōdnes dæg**). But at a very early period it was thought that *John's book*, for example, was a shortened form of *John his book*. Thus Addison (*Spectator*, No. 135) declares 's a survival of *his*. How, then, would he explain the *s* of *his*? And how would he dispose of *Mary's book*?
3. Early West Saxon had no distinctive form for the future. The present was used both as present proper and as future. Cf. Modern English "I go home tomorrow," or "I am going home tomorrow" for "I shall go home tomorrow."
4. The prefix **ge-** (Middle English *y-*), cognate with Latin *co* (*con*) and implying completeness of action, was not always used. It never occurs in the past participles of compound verbs: **oþ-feallan**, *to fall off*, past participle **oþ-feallen** (not **oþ-gefeallen**). Milton errs in prefixing it to a present participle:

"What needs my Shakespeare, for his honour'd bones,  
The labour of an age in piled stones?  
Or that his hallow'd reliques should be hid  
Under a star-ypointing pyramid."

—*Epitaph on William Shakespeare.*

And Shakespeare misuses it in "Y-ravished," a preterit (*Pericles* III, *Prologue* l. 35).

It survives in the archaic *y-clept* (Old English **ge-clypod**, called). It appears as *a* in *aware* (Old English **ge-wær**), as *e* in *enough* (Old English **ge-nōh**), and as *i* in *handiwork* (Old English **hand-ge-weorc**).

5. With intransitive verbs denoting *change of condition*, the Old English auxiliary is usually some form of *to be* rather than *to have*. See § 139.
6. The theory that *loved*, for example, is a fused form of *love-did* has been generally given up. The dental ending was doubtless an Indo-Germanic suffix, which became completely specialized only in the Teutonic languages.



## CHAPTER IV.

### ORDER OF WORDS.

**20.** The order of words in Old English is more like that of Modern German than of Modern English. Yet it is only the Transposed order that the student will feel to be at all un-English; and the Transposed order, even before the period of the Norman Conquest, was fast yielding place to the Normal order.

The three divisions of order are (1) Normal, (2) Inverted, and (3) Transposed.

(1) Normal order = subject + predicate. In Old English, the Normal order is found chiefly in independent clauses. The predicate is followed by its modifiers: **Sē hwæl bið micle læssa þonne oðre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; **Qnd hē geseah twā scipu**, *And he saw two ships*.

(2) Inverted order = predicate + subject. This order occurs also in independent clauses, and is employed (*a*) when some modifier of the predicate precedes the predicate, the subject being thrown behind. The words most frequently causing Inversion in Old English prose are **þā then**, **þonne then**, and **þær there**: **Ðā fōr hē**, *Then went he*; **Ðonne ærnað hý ealle tōweard þæm fēo**, *Then gallop they all toward the property*; **ac þær bið medo genōh**, *but there is mead enough*.

19

Inversion is employed (*b*) in interrogative sentences: **Lufast ðū mē?** *Lovest thou me?* and (*c*) in imperative sentences: **Cume ðin rice**, *Thy kingdom come*.

(3) Transposed order = subject ... predicate. That is, the predicate comes last in the sentence, being preceded by its modifiers. This is the order observed in dependent clauses: **1 Ðonne cymeð sē man sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse* (literally, *that the swiftest horse has*); **Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, siþþan hē from his āgnum hām fōr**, *Nor did he before find any cultivated land, after he went from his own home* (literally, *after he from his own home went*).

**21.** Two other peculiarities in the order of words require a brief notice.

(1) Pronominal datives and accusatives usually precede the predicate: **Hē hine oferwann**, *He overcame him* (literally, *He him overcame*); **Dryhten him andwyrde**, *The Lord answered him*. But substantival datives and accusatives, as in Modern English, follow the predicate. The

20

following sentence illustrates both orders: **Hȳ genāmon Ioseph, ƿnd hine gesealdon cīpemōnnum, ƿnd hȳ hine gesealdon in Ēgypta lōnd**, *They took Joseph, and sold him to merchants, and they sold him into Egypt* (literally, *They took Joseph, and him sold to merchants, and they him sold into Egyptians' land*).

NOTE.—The same order prevails in the case of pronominal nominatives used as predicate nouns: **Īc hit eom**, *It is I* (literally, *I it am*); **Đū hit eart**, *It is thou* (literally, *Thou it art*).

(2) The attributive genitive, whatever relationship it expresses, usually precedes the noun which it qualifies: **Breoton is gārsecges īgland**, *Britain is an island of the ocean* (literally, *ocean's island*); **Swilce hit is ēac berende on wecga ōrum**, *Likewise it is also rich in ores of metals* (literally, *metals' ores*); **Cyninga cyning**, *King of kings* (literally, *Kings' king*); **Gē witon Godes rīces gerȳne**, *Ye know the mystery of the kingdom of God* (literally, *Ye know God's kingdom's mystery*).

A preposition governing the word modified by the genitive, precedes the genitive: **2 On ealdra manna sægenum**, *In old men's sayings*; **Æt ðāra strāta ƿndum**, *At the ends of the streets* (literally, *At the streets' ends*); **For ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan**, *For all thy saints' love*. See, also, § 94, (5).

1. But in the *Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan*, in which the style is apparently more that of oral than of written discourse, the Normal is more frequent than the Transposed order in dependent clauses. In his other writings Alfred manifests a partiality for the Transposed order in dependent clauses, except in the case of substantival clauses introduced by **ƿæt**. Such clauses show a marked tendency to revert to their Normal *oratio recta* order. The norm thus set by the indirect affirmative clause seems to have proved an important factor in the ultimate disappearance of Transposition from dependent clauses. The influence of Norman French helped only to consummate forces that were already busily at work.

2. The positions of the genitive are various. It frequently follows its noun: **ƿā bearn ƿāra Aðeniensa**, *The children of the Athenians*. It may separate an adjective and a noun: **Ān lȳtel sæs earm**, *A little arm of (the) sea*. The genitive may here be construed as an adjective, or part of a compound = *A little sea-arm*; **Mid mōnegum Godes gifum**, *With many God-gifts* = *many divine gifts*.

21

## CHAPTER V.

### PRACTICAL SUGGESTIONS.

22. In the study of Old English, the student must remember that he is dealing not with a foreign or isolated language but with the earlier forms of his own mother tongue. The study will prove profitable and stimulating in proportion as close and constant comparison is made of the old with the new. The guiding principles in such a comparison are reducible chiefly to two. These are (1) the regular operation of phonetic laws, resulting especially in certain Vowel Shiftings, and (2) the alterations in form and syntax that are produced by Analogy.

(1) "The former of these is of physiological or *natural* origin, and is perfectly and inflexibly regular throughout the same period of the same language; and even though different languages show different phonetic habits and predilections, there is a strong general resemblance between the changes induced in one language and in another; many of the particular laws are true for many languages.

(2) "The other principle is psychical, or mental, or *artificial*, introducing various more or less capricious changes that are supposed to be emendations; and its operation is, to some extent, uncertain and fitful." 1

22

#### (1) Vowel-Shiftings.

23. It will prove an aid to the student in acquiring the inflections and vocabulary of Old English to note carefully the following shiftings that have taken place in the gradual growth of the Old English vowel system into that of Modern English.

(1) As stated in § 3, the Old English inflectional vowels, which were all short and unaccented, weakened in early Middle English to *e*. This *e* in Modern English is frequently dropped:

OLD ENGLISH.	MIDDLE ENGLISH.	MODERN ENGLISH.
stān-as	ston-es	stones
sun-u	sun-e	son
sun-a	sun-e	sons
ox-an	ox-en	oxen
swift-ra	swift-er	swifter
swift-ost	swift-est	swiftest
lōc-ode	lok-edē	looked

(2) The Old English long vowels have shifted their phonetic values with such uniform regularity

that it is possible in almost every case to infer the Modern English sound; but our spelling is so chaotic that while the student may infer the modern sound, he cannot always infer the modern symbol representing the sound.

OLD ENGLISH. MODERN ENGLISH.

ā	o (as in <i>no</i> ) <sup>2</sup>	{ <b>nā</b> = <i>no</i> ; <b>stān</b> = <i>stone</i> ; <b>bān</b> = <i>bone</i> ; <b>rād</b> = <i>road</i> ; <b>āc</b> = <i>oak</i> ; <b>hāl</b> = <i>whole</i> ; <b>hām</b> = <i>home</i> ; <b>sāwan</b> = <i>to sow</i> ; <b>gāst</b> = <i>ghost</i> .	23
ē	e (as in <i>he</i> )	{ <b>hē</b> = <i>he</i> ; <b>wē</b> = <i>we</i> ; <b>ðē</b> = <i>thee</i> ; <b>mē</b> = <i>me</i> ; <b>gē</b> = <i>ye</i> ; <b>hēl</b> = <i>heel</i> ; <b>wērig</b> = <i>wearry</i> ; <b>gelēfan</b> = <i>to believe</i> ; <b>gēs</b> = <i>geese</i> .	
ī (ȳ)	i (y) (as in <i>mine</i> )	{ <b>mīn</b> = <i>mine</i> ; <b>ðīn</b> = <i>thine</i> ; <b>wīr</b> = <i>wire</i> ; <b>mȳs</b> = <i>mice</i> ; <b>rīm</b> = <i>rime</i> (wrongly spelt <i>rhyme</i> ); <b>lȳs</b> = <i>lice</i> ; <b>bī</b> = <i>by</i> ; <b>scīnan</b> = <i>to shine</i> ; <b>stigrāp</b> = <i>sty-rope</i> (shortened to <i>stirrup</i> , <b>stīgan</b> meaning <i>to mount</i> ).	
ō	o (as in <i>do</i> )	{ <b>dō</b> = <i>I do</i> ; <b>tō</b> = <i>too, to</i> ; <b>gōs</b> = <i>goose</i> ; <b>tōð</b> = <i>tooth</i> ; <b>mōna</b> = <i>moon</i> ; <b>ðōm</b> = <i>doom</i> ; <b>mōd</b> = <i>mood</i> ; <b>wōgian</b> = <i>to woo</i> ; <b>slōh</b> = <i>I slew</i> .	
ū	ou (ow) (as in <i>thou</i> )	{ <b>ðū</b> = <i>thou</i> ; <b>fūl</b> = <i>foul</i> ; <b>hūs</b> = <i>house</i> ; <b>nū</b> = <i>now</i> ; <b>hū</b> = <i>how</i> ; <b>tūn</b> = <i>town</i> ; <b>ūre</b> = <i>our</i> ; <b>ūt</b> = <i>out</i> ; <b>hlūd</b> = <i>loud</i> ; <b>ðūsēnd</b> = <i>thousand</i> . <b>ǣ</b> : <b>sǣ</b> = <i>sea</i> ; <b>mǣl</b> = <i>meal</i> ; <b>dǣlan</b> = <i>to deal</i> ; <b>clǣne</b> = <i>clean</i> ; <b>grǣdig</b> = <i>greedy</i> .	
ǣ, ēa, ēo	ea (as in <i>sea</i> )	{ <b>ēa</b> : <b>ēare</b> = <i>ear</i> ; <b>ēast</b> = <i>east</i> ; <b>drēam</b> = <i>dream</i> ; <b>gēar</b> = <i>year</i> ; <b>hēatan</b> = <i>to beat</i> . <b>ēo</b> : <b>ðrēo</b> = <i>three</i> ; <b>drēorig</b> = <i>dreary</i> ; <b>sēo</b> = <i>she</i> ; <b>hrēod</b> = <i>reed</i> ; <b>dēop</b> = <i>deep</i> .	

## (2) Analogy.

24. But more important than vowel shifting is the great law of Analogy, for Analogy shapes not only words but constructions. It belongs, therefore, to Etymology and to Syntax, since it influences both form and function. By this law, minorities tend to pass over to the side of the majorities. "The greater mass of cases exerts an assimilative influence upon the smaller."<sup>3</sup> The effect of Analogy is to simplify and to regularize. "The main factor in getting rid of irregularities is group-influence, or Analogy—the influence exercised by the members of an association-group on one another.... Irregularity consists in partial isolation from an association-group through some formal difference."<sup>4</sup>

Under the influence of Analogy, entire declensions and conjugations have been swept away, leaving in Modern English not a trace of their former existence. There are in Old English, for example, five plural endings for nouns, **-as**, **-a**, **-e**, **-u**, and **-an**. No one could well have predicted<sup>5</sup> that **-as** (Middle English *-es*) would soon take the lead, and become the norm to which the other endings would eventually conform, for there were more **an**-plurals than **as**-plurals; but the **as**-plurals were doubtless more often employed in everyday speech. *Oxen* (Old English **oxan**) is the sole pure survival of the hundreds of Old English **an**-plurals. No group of feminine nouns in Old English had **-es** as the genitive singular ending; but by the close of the Middle English period all feminines formed their genitive singular in *-es* (or *-s*, Modern English 's) after the analogy of the Old English masculine and neuter nouns with **es**-genitives. The weak preterits in **-ode** have all been leveled under the **ed**-forms, and of the three hundred strong verbs in Old English more than two hundred have become weak.

These are not cases of derivation (as are the shifted vowels): Modern English *-s* in *sons*, for example, could not possibly be derived from Old English **-a** in **sunā**, or Middle English *-e* in *sune* (§ 23, (1)). They are cases of replacement by Analogy.

A few minor examples will quicken the student's appreciation of the nature of the influence exercised by Analogy:

(a) The intrusive *l* in *could* (Chaucer always wrote *coud* or *coude*) is due to association with *would* and *should*, in each of which *l* belongs by etymological right.

(b) *He need not* (for *He needs not*) is due to the assimilative influence of the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, etc., which have never added *-s* for their third person singular (§ 137).

(c) *I am friends with him*, in which *friends* is a crystalized form for *on good terms*, may be traced to the influence of such expressions as *He and I are friends*, *They are friends*, etc.

(d) Such errors as are seen in *runned*, *seed*, *gooses*, *badder*, *hissself*, *says I* (usually coupled with *says he*) are all analogical formations. Though not sanctioned by good usage, it is hardly right to call these forms the products of "false analogy." The grammar involved is false, because unsupported by literary usages and traditions; but the analogy on which these forms are built is no more false than the law of gravitation is false when it makes a dress sit unconventionally.

1. Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology*, Second Series, § 342. But Jespersen, with Collitz and others, stoutly contests "the theory of sound laws and analogy sufficing between them to explain everything in linguistic development."

2. But Old English ā preceded by **w** sometimes gives Modern English *o* as in *two*: **twā** = *two*; **hwā** = *who*; **hwām** = *whom*.

3. Whitney, *Life and Growth of Language*, Chap. IV.

4. Sweet, *A New English Grammar*, Part I., § 535.

5. As Skeat says (§ 22, (2)), Analogy is "fitful." It enables us to explain many linguistic phenomena, but not to anticipate them. The multiplication of books tends to check its influence by perpetuating the forms already in use. Thus Chaucer employed nine *en*-plurals, and his influence served for a time to check the further encroachment of the *es*-plurals. As soon as there is an acknowledged standard in any language, the operation of Analogy is fettered.

## PART II.



### ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.



#### THE STRONG OR VOWEL DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS. THE **a**-DECLENSION.



#### CHAPTER VI.

##### (a) Masculine *a*-Stems.

[O.E., M.E., and Mn.E. will henceforth be used for Old English, Middle English, and Modern English. Other abbreviations employed are self-explaining.]

25. The *a*-Declension, corresponding to the Second or *o*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only (*a*) masculine and (*b*) neuter nouns. To this declension belong most of the O.E. masculine and neuter nouns of the Strong Declension. At a very early period, many of the nouns belonging properly to the *i*- and *u*-Declensions began to pass over to the *a*-Declension. This declension may therefore be considered the *normal declension* for all masculine and neuter nouns belonging to the Strong Declension.

26. Paradigms of *sē mūð*, *mouth*; *sē fiscere*, *fisherman*; *sē hwæl*, *whale*; *sē mearh*, *horse*; *sē finger*, *finger*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	mūð	fiscer-e	hwæl	mearh	finger
<i>G.</i>	mūð-es	fiscer-es	hwæl-es	mēar-es	fingr-es
<i>D.I.</i>	mūð-e	fiscer-e	hwæl-e	mēar-e	fingr-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	mūð-as	fiscer-as	hwal-as	mēar-as	fingr-as
<i>G.</i>	mūð-a	fiscer-a	hwal-a	mēar-a	fingr-a
<i>D.I.</i>	mūð-um	fiscer-um	hwal-um	mēar-um	fingr-um

NOTE.—For meanings of the cases, see § 12. The dative and instrumental are alike in all nouns.

27. The student will observe (1) that nouns whose nominative ends in **-e (fiscere)** drop this letter before adding the case endings; (2) that **æ** before a consonant (**hwæl**) changes to **a** in the plural; <sup>1</sup> (3) that **h**, preceded by **r (mearh)** or **l (seolh, seal)**, is dropped before an inflectional vowel, the stem diphthong being then lengthened by way of compensation; (4) that dissyllables (**finger**) having the first syllable long, usually syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before adding the case endings. <sup>2</sup>

28. Paradigm of the Definite Article <sup>3</sup> *sē, sēo, ðæt* = *the*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	sē (se)	sēo	ðæt
<i>G.</i>	ðæs	ðære	ðæs
<i>D.</i>	ðæm (ðām)	ðære	ðæm (ðām)
<i>A.</i>	ðone	ðā	ðæt
<i>I.</i>	ðý, ðon	—	ðý, ðon
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	ðā		
<i>G.</i>	ðāra		
<i>D.</i>	ðæm (ðām)		

29.

VOCABULARY. <sup>4</sup>

*sē bōcere*, *scribe* [bōc].  
*sē cyning*, *king*.  
*sē dæg*, *day*.

**sē ęnde**, *end*.  
**sē ęngel**, *angel* [angelus].  
**sē fręodōm**, *freedom*.  
**sē fugol** (G. sometimes **fugles**), *bird* [fowl].  
**sē gār**, *spear* [gore, gar-fish].  
**sē heofon**, *heaven*.  
**sē hierde**, *herdsman* [shep-herd].  
**ęnd (and)**, *and*.  
**sē secg**, *man, warrior*.  
**sē seolh**, *seal*.  
**sē stān**, *stone*.  
**sē wealh**, *foreigner, Welshman* [wal-nut].  
**sē weall**, *wall*.  
**sē wįsdōm**, *wisdom*.  
**sē wulf**, *wolf*.

30.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Đāra wulfa mūđas. 2. Đæs fisceres fingras. 3. Đāra Wēala cyninge. 4. Đǣm ęnglum ęnd đǣm hierdum. 5. Đāra daga ęnde. 6. Đǣm bōcerum ęnd đǣm secgum đæs cyninges. 7. Đǣm seole ęnd đǣm fuglum. 8. Đā stānas ęnd đā gāras. 9. Hwala ęnd mēara. 10. Đāra ęngla wįsdōm. 11. Đæs cyninges bōceres fręodōm. 12. Đāra hierda fuglum. 13. Đy stāne. 14. Đǣm wealle.

30

II. 1. For the horses and the seals. 2. For the Welshmen's freedom. 3. Of the king's birds. 4. By the wisdom of men and angels. 5. With the spear and the stone. 6. The herdsman's seal and the warriors' spears. 7. To the king of heaven. 8. By means of the scribe's wisdom. 9. The whale's mouth and the foreigner's spear. 10. For the bird belonging to (= of) the king's scribe. 11. Of that finger.

1. Adjectives usually retain **ę** in closed syllables, changing it to **a** in open syllables: **hwęt** (*active*), **ględ** (*glad*), **węr** (*wary*) have G. **hwates**, **glades**, **wares**; D. **hwatum**, **gladum**, **warum**; but A. **hwętne**, **ględne**, **węrne**. Nouns, however, change to **a** only in open syllables followed by a guttural vowel, **a** or **u**. The **ę** in the open syllables of the singular is doubtless due to the analogy of the N.A. singular, both being closed syllables.

2. Cf. Mn.E. *drizz'ling*, *rememb'ring*, *abysmal* (*abysm* = *abiz<sup>u</sup>m*), *sick'ning*, in which the principle of syncopation is precisely the same.

3. This may mean four things: (1) *The*, (2) *That* (demonstrative), (3) *He, she, it*, (4) *Who, which, that* (relative pronoun). Mn.E. demonstrative *that* is, of course, the survival of O.E. neuter **đęt** in its demonstrative sense. Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, § 160, 3) sees a survival of dative plural demonstrative **đęm** in such an expression as *in them days*. It seems more probable, however, that *them* so used has followed the lead of *this* and *these, that* and *those*, in their double function of pronoun and adjective. There was doubtless some such evolution as, *I saw them. Them what? Them boys*.

An unquestioned survival of the dative singular feminine of the article is seen in the *-ter* of *Atterbury* (= **ęt đęre byrig**, *at the town*); and **đęm** survives in the *-ten* of *Attenborough*, the word *borough* having become an uninflected neuter. Skeat, *Principles*, First Series, § 185.

4. The brackets contain etymological hints that may help the student to discern relationships otherwise overlooked. The genitive is given only when not perfectly regular.

CHAPTER VII.

(b) Neuter a-Stems.

31. The neuter nouns of the **a**-Declension differ from the masculines only in the N.A. plural.

32. Paradigms of **đęt hof**, *court, dwelling*; **đęt bearn**, *child*; **đęt bān**, *bone*; **đęt rįce**, *kingdom*; **đęt spere**, *spear*; **đęt werod**, *band of men*; **đęt tungol**, *star*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	hof	bearn	bān	rįc-e	sper-e	werod	tungol
<i>G.</i>	hof-es	bearn-es	bān-es	rįc-es	sper-es	werod-es	tungl-es
<i>D.I.</i>	hof-e	bearn-e	bān-e	rįc-e	sper-e	werod-e	tungl-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	hof-u	bearn	bān	rįc-u	sper-u	werod	tungl-u
<i>G.</i>	hof-a	bearn-a	bān-a	rįc-a	sper-a	werod-a	tungl-a
<i>D.I.</i>	hof-um	bearn-um	bān-um	rįc-um	sper-um	werod-um	tungl-um

33. The paradigms show (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**hof**) take **-u** in the N.A. plural; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (**bearn, bān**) do not distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; <sup>1</sup> (3) that dissyllables in **-e**, whether the stem be long or short (**rįce, spere**), have **-u** in the N.A. plural; (4) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable

31

short<sup>2</sup> (**werod**) do not usually distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; (5) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable long (**tungol**) more frequently take **-u** in the N.A. plural.

NOTE.—Syncope occurs as in the masculine **a**-stems. See § 27, (4).

**34.** Present and Preterit Indicative of **habban**, *to have*:

PRESENT.

- Sing.* 1. **Ic hǣbbe**, *I have, or shall have.*<sup>3</sup>  
 2. **ðū hǣfst (hāfast)**, *thou hast, or wilt have.*  
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hǣfð (hāfað)**, *he, she, it has, or will have.*  
*Plur.* 1. **wē habbað**, *we have, or shall have.*  
 2. **gē habbað**, *ye have, or will have.*  
 3. **hīe habbað**, *they have, or will have.*

PRETERIT.

- Sing.* 1. **Ic hǣfde** *I had.*  
 2. **ðū hǣfdest**, *thou hadst.*  
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hǣfde**, *he, she, it had.*  
*Plur.* 1. **wē hǣfdon**, *we had.*  
 2. **gē hǣfdon**, *ye had.*  
 3. **hīe hǣfdon**, *they had.*

NOTE.—The negative **ne**, *not*, which always precedes its verb, contracts with all the forms of **habban**. The negative loses its **e**, **habban** its **h**. **Ne + habban = nabban; Ic ne hǣbbe = Ic næbbe; Ic ne hǣfde = Ic næfde**, etc. The negative forms may be got, therefore, by simply substituting in each case **n** for **h**.

32

**35.**

VOCABULARY.

- ðæt dæl**, *dale.*  
**ðæt dēor**, *animal* [deer<sup>4</sup>].  
**ðæt dor**, *door.*  
**ðæt fæt**, *vessel* [vat].  
**ðæt fȳr**, *fire.*  
**ðæt gēar**, *year.*  
**ðæt geoc**, *yoke.*  
**ðæt geset**, *habitation* [settlement].  
**ðæt hēafod**, *head.*  
**ðæt hūs**, *house.*  
**ðæt lic**, *body* [lich-gate].  
**ðæt lim**, *limb.*  
**on** (with dat.) *in.*  
**ðæt spor**, *track.*  
**ðæt wāpen**, *weapon.*  
**ðæt wīf**, *wife, woman.*  
**ðæt wīte**, *punishment.*  
**ðæt word**, *word.*

**36.**

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Hē hafað ðæs cyninges bearn. 2. Ðā Wēalas habbað ðā speru. 3. Ðā wīf habbað ðāra seġga wāpnū. 4. Ðū hǣfst ðone fugol on ðæt hūs ðæs hierdes. 5. Hǣfð<sup>5</sup> hēo ðā fatu<sup>6</sup>? 6. Hǣfde hē ðæs wīfes lic on ðæm hofe? 7. Hē næfde ðæs wīfes lic; hē hǣfde ðæs dēores hēafod. 8. Hǣfð sē cyning gesetu on ðæm dæle? 9. Sē bōcere hǣfð ðā sēolas on ðæm hūse. 10. Gē habbað frēodōm.  
 II. 1. They have yokes and spears. 2. We have not the vessels in the house. 3. He had fire in the vessel. 4. Did the woman have (= Had the woman) the children? 5. The animal has the body of the woman's child. 6. I shall have the heads of the wolves. 7. He and she have the king's houses. 8. Have not (= **Nabbað**) the children the warrior's weapons?

33

1. Note the many nouns in Mn.E. that are unchanged in the plural. These are either survivals of O.E. long stems, *swine, sheep, deer, folk*, or analogical forms, *fish, trout, mackerel, salmon*, etc.
2. Dissyllables whose first syllable is a prefix are, of course, excluded. They follow the declension of their last member: **gebed**, *prayer*, **gebedu**, *prayers*; **gefoht**, *battle*, **gefoht**, *battles*.
3. See § 17, Note 1. Note that (as in **hwæl**, § 27, (2)) **æ** changes to **a** when the following syllable contains **a**: **hǣbbe**, but **hāfast**.
4. The old meaning survives in Shakespeare's "Rats and mice and such small deer," *King Lear*, III, IV, 144.
5. See § 20, (2), (b).
6. See § 27, (2).



CHAPTER VIII.  
THE **ō**-DECLENSION.

37. The **ō**-Declension, corresponding to the First or *ā*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only feminine nouns. Many feminine **i**-stems and **u**-stems soon passed over to this Declension. The **ō**-Declension may, therefore, be considered the *normal declension* for all strong feminine nouns.

38. Paradigms of **sēo giefu**, *gift*; **sēo wund**, *wound*; **sēo rōd**, *cross*; **sēo leornung**, *learning*; **sēo sāwol**, *soul*:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	gief-u	wund	rōd	leornung	sāwol
<i>G.</i>	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
<i>D.I.</i>	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
<i>A.</i>	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	gief-a	wund-a	rōd-a	leornung-a	sāwl-a
<i>G.</i>	gief-a	wund-a	rōd-a	leornung-a	sāwl-a
<i>D.I.</i>	gief-um	wund-um	rōd-um	leornung-um	sāwl-um

39. Note (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**giefu**) take **u** in the nominative singular; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (**wund**, **rōd**) present the unchanged stem in the nominative singular; (3) that dissyllables are declined as monosyllables, except that abstract nouns in **-ung** prefer **a** to **e** in the singular.

NOTE.—Syncopation occurs as in masculine and neuter **a**-stems. See § 27, (4).

40. Present and Preterit Indicative of **bēon** (**wesan**) *to be*:

PRESENT (first form).	PRESENT (second form).	PRETERIT.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic eom	1. Ic bēom	1. Ic wæs
2. ðū eart	2. ðū bist	2. ðū wære
3. hē is	3. hē bið	3. hē wæs
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } sind(on), sint	1. wē } bēoð	1. wē } wæron
2. gē } }	2. gē } }	2. gē } }
3. hīe } }	3. hīe } }	3. hīe } }

NOTE 1.—The forms **bēom**, **bist**, etc. are used chiefly as future tenses in O.E. They survive to-day only in dialects and in poetry. Farmer Dobson, for example, in Tennyson's *Promise of May*, uses *be* for all persons of the present indicative, both singular and plural; and *there be* is frequent in Shakespeare for *there are*. The Northern dialect employed **aron** as well as **sindon** and **sind** for the present plural; hence Mn.E. *are*.

NOTE 2.—Fusion with **ne** gives **neom**, **neart**, **nis** for the present; **næs**, **nære**, **næron** for the preterit.

NOTE 3.—The verb *to be* is followed by the nominative case, as in Mn.E.; but when the predicate noun is plural, and the subject a neuter pronoun in the singular, the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun. The neuter singular **ðæt** is frequently employed in this construction: **Ðæt wæron eall Finnas**, *They were all Fins*; **Ðæt sind englas**, *They are angels*; **Ðæt wæron engla gāstas**, *They were angels' spirits*.

Notice, too, that O.E. writers do not say *It is I*, *It is thou*, but *I it am*, *Thou it art*: **Ic hit eom**, **ðū hit eart**. See § 21, (1), Note 1.

41.

VOCABULARY.

- sēo brycg**, *bridge*.
- sēo costnung**, *temptation*.
- sēo cwalu**, *death* [quail, quell].
- sēo fōr**, *journey* [faran].
- sēo frōfor**, *consolation, comfort*.
- sēo geoguð**, *youth*.
- sēo glōf**, *glove*.
- sēo hālignes** <sup>1</sup>, *holiness*.
- sēo heall**, *hall*.
- hēr**, *here*.
- hwā**, *who?*
- hwær**, *where?*
- sēo lufu**, *love*.
- sēo mearc**, *boundary* [mark, marches <sup>2</sup>].
- sēo mēd**, *meed, reward*.
- sēo mildheortnes**, *mild-heartedness, mercy*.
- sēo stōw**, *place* [stow away].
- ðær**, *there*.
- sēo ðearf**, *need*.
- sēo wylf**, *she wolf*.

42.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hwær is ðære brycge ende? 2. Hēr sind ðāra rīca mearca. 3. Hwā hæfð þā glōfa? 4. Ðær bið ðæm cyninge frōfre ðearf. 5. Sēo wund is on ðære wylfe hēafde. 6. Wē habbað costnunga. 7. Hīe nāeron on ðære healle. 8. Ic hit neom. 9. Ðæt wāeron Wēalas. 10. Ðæt sind ðæs wīfes bearn.

II. 1. We shall have the women's gloves. 2. Where is the place? 3. He will be in the hall. 4. Those (**Ðæt**) were not the boundaries of the kingdom. 5. It was not I. 6. Ye are not the king's scribes. 7. The shepherd's words are full (**full** + gen.) of wisdom and comfort. 8. Where are the bodies of the children? 9. The gifts are not here. 10. Who has the seals and the birds?

1. All words ending in **-nes** double the **-s** before adding the case endings.
2. As in *warden of the marches*.

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE **i**-DECLENSION AND THE **u**-DECLENSION.

#### The *i*-Declension. (See § 58.)

**43.** The **i**-Declension, corresponding to the group of *i*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains chiefly (*a*) masculine and (*b*) feminine nouns. The N.A. plural of these nouns ended originally in **-e** (from older **i**).

#### (a) Masculine *i*-Stems.

**44.** These stems have almost completely gone over to the **a**-Declension, so that **-as** is more common than **-e** as the N.A. plural ending, whether the stem is long or short. The short stems all have **-e** in the N.A. singular.

**45.** Paradigms of **sē wȳrm**, *worm*; **sē wine**, *friend*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>N.A.</i>	wȳrm	win-e
	<i>G.</i>	wȳrm-es	win-es
	<i>D.I.</i>	wȳrm-e	win-e
<i>Plur</i>	<i>N.A.</i>	wȳrm-as	win-as (e)
	<i>G.</i>	wȳrm-a	win-a
	<i>D.I.</i>	wȳrm-um	win-um

#### Names of Peoples.

**46.** The only **i**-stems that regularly retain **-e** of the N.A. plural are certain names of tribes or peoples used only in the plural.

**47.** Paradigms of **ðā Eŋgle**, *Angles*; **ðā Norðymbre**, *Northumbrians*; **ðā lēode**, *people*:

<i>Plur.</i>	<i>N.A.</i>	Eŋgle	Norðymbre	lēode
	<i>G.</i>	Eŋgla	Norðymbra	lēoda
	<i>D.I.</i>	Eŋglum	Norðymbrum	lēodum

#### (b) Feminine *i*-Stems.

**48.** The short stems (**frēm-u**) conform entirely to the declension of short **ō**-stems; long stems (**cwēn**, **wȳrt**) differ from long **ō**-stems in having no ending for the A. singular. They show, also, a preference for **-e** rather than **-a** in the N.A. plural.

**49.** Paradigms of **sēo frēm-u**, *benefit*; **sēo cwēn**, *woman*, *queen* [quean]; **sēo wȳrt**, *root* [wort]:

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>N.</i>	frēm-u	cwēn	wȳrt
	<i>G.</i>	frēm-e	cwēn-e	wȳrt-e
	<i>D.I.</i>	frēm-e	cwēn-e	wȳrt-e
	<i>A.</i>	frēm-e	cwēn	wȳrt
<i>Plur</i>	<i>N.A.</i>	frēm-a	cwēn-e (a)	wȳrt-e (a)
	<i>G.</i>	frēm-a	cwēn-a	wȳrt-a
	<i>D.I.</i>	frēm-um	cwēn-um	wȳrt-um

#### The *u*-Declension.

**50.** The **u**-Declension, corresponding to the group of **u**-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains no neuters, and but few (*a*) masculines and (*b*) feminines. The short-stemmed nouns of both genders (**sun-u**, **dur-u**) retain the final **u** of the N.A. singular, while the long stems (**feld**, **hōnd**) drop it. The influence of the masculine **a**-stems is most clearly seen in the long-stemmed masculines of the **u**-Declension (**feld**, **feld-es**, etc.).

NOTE.—Note the general aversion of all O.E. long stems to final **-u**: cf. N.A. plural **hof-u**, but **bearn**, **bān**; N. singular **gief-u**, but **wund**, **rōd**; N. singular **frēm-u**, but **cwēn**, **wȳrt**; N.A.

singular **sun-u, dur-u**, but **feld, hōnd**.

**(a) Masculine *u*-Stems.**

51. Paradigms of **sē sun-u**, *son*; **sē feld**, *field*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sun-u	feld
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	feld-a (es)
<i>D.I.</i>	sun-a	feld-a (e)
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	sun-a	feld-a (as)
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	feld-a
<i>D.I.</i>	sun-um	feld-um

**(b) Feminine *u*-Stems.**

52. Paradigms of **sēo dur-u**, *door*; **sēo hōnd**, *hand*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	dur-u	hōnd
<i>G.</i>	dur-a	hōnd-a
<i>D.I.</i>	dur-a	hōnd-a
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	dur-a	hōnd-a
<i>G.</i>	dur-a	hōnd-a
<i>D.I.</i>	dur-um	hōnd-um

53. Paradigm of the Third Personal Pronoun, **hē, hēo, hit** = *he, she, it*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	hē	hēo	hit
<i>G.</i>	his	hiere	his
<i>D.</i>	him	hiere	him
<i>A.</i>	hine, hiene	hīe	hit
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		hīe	
<i>G.</i>		hiera	
<i>D.</i>		him	

54.

VOCABULARY.

(**i**-STEMS.)

**sē cierr**, *turn, time* [char, chare, chore].

**sēo dāed**, *deed*.

**sē dāel**, *part* [a great deal].

**ōā Dene**, *Danes*.

**sē frēondscipe**, *friendship*.

**sēo hȳd**, *skin, hide*.

**ōā lōndlēode**, *natives*.

**ōā Mierce**, *Mercians*.

**ōā Rōmware**, *Romans*.

**ōā Seaxe**, *Saxons*.

**sē stēde**, *place* [in-stead of].

(**u**-STEMS.)

**sēo flōr**, *floor*.

**sēo nosu**, *nose*.

**sēumor** (*G. sumeres, D. sumera*), *summer*.

**sēwinter** (*G. wintres, D. wintra*), *winter*.

**sēwudu**, *wood, forest*.

NOTE.—The numerous masculine nouns ending in **-hād, —cildhād** (*childhood*), **wīfhād** (*womanhood*),—belong to the **u**-stems historically; but they have all passed over to the **a**-Declension.

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **ōā Seaxe** habbað ðæs dēores hȳd on ðāem wuda. 2. Hwā hæfð **ōā** giefra? 3. **ōā Mierce** hīe <sup>1</sup> habbað. 4. Hwær is ðæs Wēales fuḡol? 5. **ōā Dene** hiene habbað. 6. Hwær sindon hiera winas? 7. Hīe sindon on ðæs cyninges wuda. 8. **ōā Rōmware** ƿnd **ōā Seaxe** hæfdon **ōā** gāras ƿnd **ōā** geocu. 9. Hēo is on ðāem hūse on wintra, ƿnd on ðāem feldum on sumera. 10. Hwær is ðæs hofes duru? 11. Hēo <sup>2</sup> (= sēo duru) nis hēr.

II. 1. His friends have the bones of the seals and the bodies of the Danes. 2. Art thou the king's son? 3. Has she her <sup>3</sup> gifts in her <sup>3</sup> hands? 4. Here are the fields of the natives. 5. Who had the bird? 6. I had it. <sup>2</sup> 7. The child had the worm in his <sup>3</sup> fingers. 8. The Mercians were here during (the) summer (**on** + dat.).

1. See § 21, (1).

2. Pronouns agree in gender with the nouns for which they stand. **Hit**, however, sometimes stands for inanimate things of both masculine and feminine genders. See Wūlfing (*l.c.*) I, § 238.

## CHAPTER X.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS.

56. The unchanged stem of the present indicative may always be found by dropping **-an** of the infinitive: **feall-an**, *to fall*; **cēos-an**, *to choose*; **bīd-an**, *to abide*.

57. The personal endings are:

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	<b>-e</b>	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	} <b>-að</b>
2.	<b>-est</b>	2.	
3.	<b>-eð</b>	3.	

**i-Umlaut.**

58. The 2d and 3d singular endings were originally not **-est** and **-eð**, but **-is** and **-ið**; and the **i** of these older endings has left its traces upon almost every page of Early West Saxon literature. This **i**, though unaccented and soon displaced, exerted a powerful back influence upon the vowel of the preceding accented syllable. This influence, a form of regressive assimilation, is known as **i-umlaut** (pronounced *oóm-lowt*). The vowel **i** or **j** (= *y*), being itself a palatal, succeeded in palatalizing every guttural vowel that preceded it, and in imposing still more of the **i**-quality upon diphthongs that were already palatal.<sup>1</sup> The changes produced were these:

<b>a</b>	became <b>ę</b> (æ):	<b>męnn</b> (< *mann-iz), <i>men</i> .
<b>ā</b>	" <b>ǣ</b>	<b>ǣnig</b> (< *ān-ig), <i>any</i> .
<b>u</b>	" <b>y</b>	<b>wyllen</b> (< *wull-in), <i>woollen</i> .
<b>ū</b>	" <b>ȳ</b>	<b>mȳs</b> (< *mūs-iz), <i>mice</i> .
<b>o</b>	" <b>ę</b>	<b>dęhter</b> (< *dohtr-i), <i>to or for the daughter</i> .
<b>ō</b>	" <b>ē</b>	<b>fēt</b> (< *fōt-iz), <i>feet</i> .
<b>ea</b>	" <b>ie</b>	<b>wiexð</b> (< *weax-ið), <i>he grows</i> ( <b>weaxan</b> = <i>to grow</i> ).
<b>ēa</b>	" <b>īe</b>	<b>hiewð</b> (< *hēaw-ið), <i>he hews</i> ( <b>hēawan</b> = <i>to hew</i> ).
<b>eo</b>	" <b>ie</b>	<b>wiercan</b> (< *weorc-jan), <i>to work</i> .
<b>ēo</b>	" <b>īe</b>	<b>liehtan</b> (< *lēoht-jan), <i>to light</i> .

**The Unchanged Present Indicative.**

59. In the Northumbrian and Mercian dialects, as well as in the dialect of Late West Saxon, the 2d and 3d singular endings were usually joined to the present stem without modification either of the stem itself or of the personal endings. The complete absence of umlauted forms in the present indicative of Mn.E. is thus accounted for.

In Early West Saxon, however, such forms as the following are comparatively rare in the 2d and 3d singular:

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic feall-e ( <i>I fall</i> )	cēos-e ( <i>I choose</i> )	bīd-e ( <i>I abide</i> )	
2.	ðū feall-est	cēos-est	bīd-est	
3.	hē feall-eð	cēos-eð	bīd-eð	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} feall-að	} cēos-að	} bīd-að
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

**The Present Indicative with i-Umlaut and Contraction.**

60. The 2d and 3d persons singular are distinguished from the other forms of the present indicative in Early West Saxon by (1) **i-umlaut** of the vowel of the stem, (2) syncope of the vowel of the ending, giving **-st** and **-ð** for **-est** and **-eð**, and (3) contraction of **-st** and **-ð** with the final consonant or consonants of the stem.

**Contraction.**

61. The changes produced by **i-umlaut** have been already discussed. By these changes, therefore, the stems of the 2d and 3d singular indicative of such verbs as (1) **stōndan** (= **standan**), *to stand*, (2) **cuman**, *to come*, (3) **grōwan**, *to grow*, (4) **brūcan**, *to enjoy*, (5) **blāwan**, *to blow*, (6) **feallan**, *to fall*, (7) **hēawan**, *to hew*, (8) **weorpan**, *to throw*, and (9) **cēosan**, *to choose*, become respectively (1) **stęnd-**,<sup>2</sup> (2) **cym-**, (3) **grēw-**, (4) **brȳc-**, (5) **blāw-**, (6) **fiell-**, (7) **hiew-**, (8) **wierp-**, and (9) **cīes-**.

If the unchanged stem contains the vowel **e**, this is changed in the 2d and 3d singular to **i** (**ie**): **cweðan** *to say*, stem **cwið-**; **beran** *to bear*, stem **bier-**. But this mutation<sup>3</sup> had taken place long before the period of O.E., and belongs to the Germanic languages in general. It is best, however, to class the change of **e** to **i** or **ie** with the changes due to umlaut, since it occurs consistently in the 2d and 3d singular stems of Early West Saxon, and outlasted almost all of the umlaut forms

proper.

If, now, the syncopated endings **-st** and **-ð** are added directly to the unlauded stem, there will frequently result such a massing of consonants as almost to defy pronunciation: **cwið-st**, *thou sayest*; **stend-st**, *thou standest*, etc. Some sort of contraction, therefore, is demanded for the sake of euphony. The ear and eye will, by a little practice, become a sure guide in these contractions. The following rules, however, must be observed. They apply only to the 2d and 3d singular of the present indicative:

43

(1) If the stem ends in a double consonant, one of the consonants is dropped:

- |                              |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. feall-e ( <i>I fall</i> ) | 1. winn-e ( <i>I fight</i> ) | 1. swimm-e ( <i>I swim</i> ) |
| 2. fiel-st                   | 2. win-st                    | 2. swim-st                   |
| 3. fiel-ð                    | 3. win-ð                     | 3. swim-ð                    |

(2) If the stem ends in **-ð**, this is dropped:

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cweð-e ( <i>I say</i> ) | 1. weorð-e ( <i>I become</i> ) |
| 2. cwi-st                  | 2. wier-st                     |
| 3. cwi-ð                   | 3. wier-ð                      |

(3) If the stem ends in **-d**, this is changed to **-t**. The **-ð** of the ending is then also changed to **-t**, and usually absorbed. Thus the stem of the 2d singular serves as stem and ending for the 3d singular:

- |   |                             |                             |                            |
|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. stōnd-e (= stand-e) ( <i>I stand</i> ) | 1. bind-e ( <i>I bind</i> ) | 1. bīd-e ( <i>I abide</i> ) | 1. rīd-e ( <i>I ride</i> ) |
| 2. stēt-st                                | 2. bint-st                  | 2. bīt-st                   | 2. rīt-st                  |
| 3. stēt                                   | 3. bint                     | 3. bīt (-t)                 | 3. rīt (-t)                |

(4) If the stem ends already in **-t**, the endings are added as in (3), **-ð** being again changed to **-t** and absorbed:

- |                               |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. brēot-e ( <i>I break</i> ) | 1. feoht-e ( <i>I fight</i> ) | 1. bīt-e ( <i>I bite</i> ) |
| 2. brīet-st                   | 2. fieht-st                   | 2. bīt-st                  |
| 3. brīet (-t)                 | 3. fieht                      | 3. bīt (-t)                |

(5) If the stem ends in **-s**, this is dropped before **-st** (to avoid **-sst**), but is retained before **-ð**, the latter being changed to **-t**. Thus the 2d and 3d singulars are identical: <sup>4</sup>

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. cēos-e ( <i>I choose</i> ) | 1. rīs-e ( <i>I rise</i> ) |
| 2. cīe-st                     | 2. rī-st                   |
| 3. cīes-t                     | 3. rīs-t                   |

44

## 62.

### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē cyning fiēð. 2. Ðā wīf cēosað ðā giefa. 3. Ðū stētst on ðæm hūse. 4. Hē wierð ðæt wæpen. 5. Sē secg hīewð ðā lic. 6. Ðæt sæd grēwð ond wiexð (*Mark iv. 27*). 7. Ic stōnde hēr, ond ðū stētst ðær. 8. "Ic hit eom," cwið hē. 9. Hie berað ðæs wulfes bān. 10. Hē hīe bint, ond ic hine binde. 11. Ne rītst ðū?

II. 1. We shall bind him. 2. Who chooses the child's gifts? 3. "He was not here," says she. 4. Wilt thou remain in the hall? 5. The wolves are biting (= bite) the fishermen. 6. He enjoys <sup>5</sup> the love of his children. 7. Do you enjoy (= Enjoyest thou) the consolation and friendship of the scribe? 8. Will he come? 9. I shall throw the spear, and thou wilt bear the weapons. 10. The king's son will become king. 11. The army (**werod**) is breaking the doors and walls of the house.

1. The *palatal* vowels and diphthongs were long or short **æ, e, i, (ie), y, ea, eo**; the *guttural* vowels were long or short **a, o, u**.

2. The more common form for stems with **a** is **æ** rather than **ę**: **faran**, *to go*, 2d and 3d singular stem **fær-**; **sacan**, *to contend*, stem **sæc-**. Indeed, **a** changes to **ę** *via* **æ** (Cosijn, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*, I, § 32).

3. Umlaut is frequently called Mutation. Metaphony is still another name for the same phenomenon. The term Metaphony has the advantage of easy adjectival formation (metaphonic). It was proposed by Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, Paris, 1894), but has not been naturalized.

4. This happens also when the infinitive stem ends in **st**:

- |                               |
|-------------------------------|
| 1. berst-e ( <i>I burst</i> ) |
| 2. bier-st                    |
| 3. bierst.                    |

5. **Brūcan**, *to enjoy*, usually takes the genitive case, not the accusative. It means "to have joy of any thing."



## CHAPTER XI.

### THE CONSONANT DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

63. The *n*-Declension contains almost all of the O.E. nouns belonging to the Consonant Declensions. The stem characteristic *n* has been preserved in the oblique cases, so that there is no difficulty in distinguishing *n*-stems from the preceding vowel stems.

45

The *n*-Declension includes (a) masculines, (b) feminines, and (c) neuters. The masculines far outnumber the feminines, and the neuters contain only *ēage*, *eye* and *ēare*, *ear*. The masculines end in *-a*, the feminines and neuters in *-e*.

64. Paradigms of (a) *sē hunta*, *hunter*; (b) *sēo tunge*, *tongue*; (c) *ðæt ēage*, *eye*:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	hunt-a	tung-e	ēag-e
<i>G.D.I.</i>	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-an
<i>A.</i>	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-an
<i>G.</i>	hunt-ena	tung-ena	ēag-ena
<i>D.I.</i>	hunt-um	tung-um	ēag-um

65.

VOCABULARY.

*sē adesa*, *hatchet*, *adze*.

*sē āmetta*, *leisure* [empt-iness].

*sē bōna (bana)*, *murderer* [bane].

*sēo cirice*, *church* [Scotch kirk].

*sē cnapa* (later, *cnafa*), *boy* [knave].

*sē cuma*, *stranger* [comer].

*ðæt ēare*, *ear*.

*sēo eorðe*, *earth*.

*sē gefēra*, *companion* [co-farer].

*sē guma*, *man* [bride-groom<sup>1</sup>].

*sēo heorte*, *heart*.

*sē mōna*, *moon*.

*sēo nāedre*, *adder* [a nadder > an adder<sup>2</sup>].

*sē oxa*, *ox*.

*sē scēowyrhta*, *shoe-maker* [shoe-wright].

*sēo sunne*, *sun*.

*sē tēona*, *injury* [teen].

*biddan* (with dat. of person and gen. of thing<sup>3</sup>), *to request*, *ask for*.

*cwelan*, *to die* [quail].

*gescieppan*, *to create* [shape, land-scape, friend-ship].

*giefan* (with dat. of indirect object), *to give*.

*healdan*, *to hold*.

*helpan* (with dat.), *to help*.

*scēððan*<sup>4</sup> (with dat.), *to injure* [scathe].

*wiðstōndan (-standan)* (with dat.), *to withstand*.

*writan*, *to write*.

46

66.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Sē scēowyrhta brȳcð his āmettan*. 2. *Ðā guman biddað ðæm cnapan ðæs adesan*. 3. *Hwā is sē cuma?* 4. *Hielpst ðū ðæm bōnan?* 5. *Ic him ne helpe*. 6. *Ðā bearn scēððað ðæs bōnan ēagum qnd ēarum*. 7. *Sē cuma cwielð on ðære cirican*. 8. *Sē hunta wiðstęnt ðæm wulfum*. 9. *Ðā oxan berað ðæs cnapan gefēran*. 10. *Sē mōna qnd ðā tunglu sind on ðæm heofonum*. 11. *Ðā huntan healdað ðære nāedran tungan*. 12. *Hē hiere giefð ðā giefa*. 13. *Ðā werod scēððað ðæs cyninges feldum*.

II. 1. Who will bind the mouths of the oxen? 2. Who gives him the gifts? 3. Thou art helping him, and I am injuring him. 4. The boy's companion is dying. 5. His nephew does not enjoy his leisure. 6. The adder's tongue injures the king's companion. 7. The sun is the day's eye. 8. She asks the strangers for the spears. 9. The men's bodies are not here. 10. Is he not (**Nis hē**) the child's murderer? 11. Who creates the bodies and the souls of men? 12. Thou withstandest her. 13. He is not writing.

1. The *r* is intrusive in *-groom*, as it is in *cart-r-idge*, *part-r-idge*, *vag-r-ant*, and *hoa-r-se*.

2. The *n* has been appropriated by the article. Cf. *an apron* (< *a napron*), *an auger* (< *a nauger*), *an orange* (< *a norange*), *an umpire* (< *a numpire*).

3. In Mn.E. we say "I request a favor of you"; but in O.E. it was "I request you (dative) of a favor" (genitive). Cf. *Cymbeline*, III, vi, 92: "We'll mannerly demand thee of thy story." See Franz's *Shakespeare-Grammatik*, § 361 (1900).

4. **Scēððan** is conjugated through the present indicative like **fręmman**. See § 129.

## Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions.

**67.** The nouns belonging here are chiefly masculines and feminines. Their stem ended in a consonant other than **n**. The most important of them may be divided as follows: (1) The *foot* Declension, (2) **r**-Stems, and (3) **nd**-Stems. These declensions are all characterized by the prevalence, wherever possible, of **i**-umlaut in certain cases, the case ending being then dropped.

**68.** (1) The nouns belonging to the *foot* Declension exhibit umlaut most consistently in the N.A. plural.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē fōt ( <i>foot</i> )	sē mōn ( <i>man</i> )	sē tōð ( <i>tooth</i> )	sēo cū ( <i>cow</i> )
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	fēt	mēn	tēð	cȳ

NOTE.—The dative singular usually has the same form as the N.A. plural. Here belong also **sēo bōc** (*book*), **sēo burg** (*borough*), **sēo gōs** (*goose*), **sēo lūs** (*louse*), and **sēo mūs** (*mouse*), all with unumlauted plurals. Mn.E. preserves only six of the *foot* Declension plurals: *feet*, *men*, *teeth*, *geese*, *lice*, and *mice*. The *c* in the last two is an artificial spelling, intended to preserve the sound of voiceless *s*. Mn.E. *kine* (= *cy-en*) is a double plural formed after the analogy of weak stems; Burns in *The Twa Dogs* uses *kye*.

No umlaut is possible in **sēo niht** (*night*) and **sē mōnað** (*month*), plural **niht** and **mōnað** (preserved in Mn.E. *twelvemonth* and *fortnight*).

(2) The **r**-Stems contain nouns expressing kinship, and exhibit umlaut of the dative singular.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē fæder	sē brōðor	sēo mōdor	sēo dohtor	sēo swuster
	( <i>father</i> )	( <i>brother</i> )	( <i>mother</i> )	( <i>daughter</i> )	( <i>sister</i> )
<i>D.</i>	fæder	brēðer	mēder	dehter	swyster

NOTE.—The N.A. plural is usually the same as the N.A. singular. These umlaut datives are all due to the presence of a former **i**. Cf. Lat. dative singular *patri*, *frātri*, *mātri*, *sorori* (< *\*sosorī*), and Greek θυγατρί.

(3) The **nd**-Stems show umlaut both in the N.A. plural and in the dative singular:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē frēond ( <i>friend</i> )	sē fēond ( <i>enemy</i> )
<i>D.</i>	frīend	fiend
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	frīend	fiend

NOTE.—Mn.E. *friend* and *fiend* are interesting analogical spellings. When **s** had been added by analogy to the O.E. plurals **frīend** and **fiend**, thus giving the double plurals *friends* and *fiends*, a second singular was formed by dropping the **s**. Thus *friend* and *fiend* displaced the old singulars *frend* and *fend*, both of which occur in the M.E. *Ormulum*, written about the year 1200.

## Summary of O.E. Declensions.

**69.** A brief, working summary of the O.E. system of declensions may now be made on the basis of gender.

All O.E. nouns are (1) masculine, (2) feminine, or (3) neuter.

(1) The masculines follow the declension of **mūð** (§ 26), except those ending in **-a**, which are declined like **hunta** (§ 64):

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	mūð	<i>N.</i>	hunta
<i>G.</i>	mūðes	<i>G.D.A.</i>	huntan
<i>D.I.</i>	mūðe	<i>I.</i>	huntan
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	mūðas		huntan
<i>G.</i>	mūða		huntena
<i>D.I.</i>	mūðum		huntum

(2) The short-stemmed neuters follow the declension of **hof** (§ 32); the long-stemmed, that of **bearn** (§ 32):

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	hof	bearn
<i>G.</i>	hofes	bearnes
<i>D.I.</i>	hofe	bearne
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	hofu	bearn
<i>G.</i>	hofa	bearna
<i>D.I.</i>	hofum	bearnum

(3) The feminines follow the declensions of **giefu** and **wund** (§ 38) (the only difference being in the N. singular), except those ending in **-e**, which follow the declension of **tunge** (§ 64):

<i>Sing. N.</i>	giefu	wund	tunge
<i>G.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>D.I.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>A.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	giefa	wunda	tungan
<i>G.</i>	giefa	wunda	tungena
<i>D.I.</i>	giefum	wundum	tungum

ac, but.

**būtan** (with dat.), *except, but, without*.

**sē Crīst**, *Christ*.

**sē eorl**, *earl, alderman, warrior*.

**ðæt Englalond**, *England* [Angles' land].

**faran**, *to go* [fare].

**findan**, *to find*.

**sē God**, *God*.

**hātan**, *to call, name*.

**sē hlāford**, *lord* [hlāf-weard].

**mid** (with dat.), *with*.

**on** (with acc.), *on, against, into*.

**tō** (with dat.), *to*.

**uton** (with infin.), *let us*.

NOTE.—O.E. **mōn (man)** is frequently used in an indefinite sense for *one, people, they*. It thus takes the place of a passive construction proper: **And man nam þā gebrotu þe þār belifon, twelf cýpan fulle**, *And there were taken up of fragments that remained there twelve baskets full*; but more literally, *And one (or they) took the fragments, etc.*; **Qnd Hæstenes wif qnd his suna twēgen mōn brōhte tō ðæm cyninge**, *And Hæsten's wife and his two sons were brought to the king*.

71.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōn hine hæt Ælfred. 2. Uton faran on ðæt scip. 3. God is cyninga cyning qnd hlāforda hlāford. 4. Sē eorl ne giefo giefra his fiend. 5. Ic næs mid his frīend. 6. Sēo mōdor færð mid hiere dehter on ðā burg. 7. Fintst ðū ðæs bōceres bēc? 8. Hē bint ealle (all) ðā deor būtan ðæm wulfum. 9. Ðū eart Crīst, Godes sunu. 10. "Uton bindan ðæs bōnan fēt," cwīð hē.

50

II. 1. Christ is the son of God. 2. Let us call him Cædmon. 3. He throws his spear against the door. 4. Thou art not the earl's brother. 5. He will go with his father to England, but I shall remain (abide) here. 6. Gifts are not given to murderers. 7. Who will find the tracks of the animals? 8. They ask their lord for his weapons (§ 65, Note 3).

## CHAPTER XIII.

### PRONOUNS.

#### (1) Personal Pronouns.

72. Paradigms of **ic, I; ðū, thou**. For **hē, hēo, hit**, see § 53.

<i>Sing. N.</i>	ic	ðū
<i>G.</i>	mīn	ðīn
<i>D.</i>	mē	ðē
<i>A.</i>	mē (mec)	ðē (ðec)
<i>Dual N.</i>	wit ( <i>we two</i> )	git ( <i>ye two</i> )
<i>G.</i>	uncer ( <i>of us two</i> )	incer ( <i>of you two</i> )
<i>D.</i>	unc ( <i>to or for us two</i> )	inc ( <i>to or for you two</i> )
<i>A.</i>	unc ( <i>us two</i> )	inc ( <i>you two</i> )
<i>Plur N.</i>	wē	gē
<i>G.</i>	ūser (ūre)	ēower
<i>D.</i>	ūs	ēow
<i>A.</i>	ūs (ūsic)	ēow (ēowic)

NOTE 1.—The dual number was soon absorbed by the plural. No relic of it now remains. But when two and only two are referred to, the dual is consistently used in O.E. An example occurs in the case of the two blind men (*Matthew ix. 27-31*): **Gemiltsa unc, Davīdes sunu!** *Pity us, (thou) Son of David!* **Sie inc æfter incrum gelēafan**, *Be it unto you according to your faith*.

51

NOTE 2.—Mn.E. *ye* (< **gē**), the nominative proper, is fast being displaced by *you* (< **ēow**), the old objective. The distinction is preserved in the King James's version of the Bible: *Ye in me, and I in you* (*John xiv. 20*); but not in Shakespeare and later writers.

#### (2) Demonstrative Pronouns.

73. Paradigm of **ðēs, ðēos, ðis, this**. For the Definite Article as a demonstrative, meaning *that*, see § 28, Note 3.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	ðēs	ðēos	ðis
<i>G.</i>	ðisses	ðisse	ðisses
<i>D.</i>	ðissum	ðisse	ðissum
<i>A.</i>	ðisne	ðās	ðis
<i>I.</i>	ðys	—	ðys



All Genders.

Plur. N.A.	ðās
G.	ðissa
D.	ðissum

(3) The Interrogative Pronoun.

74. Paradigm of **hwā, hwæt**, *who, what?*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Sing. N.	hwā	hwæt
G.	hwæs	hwæs
D.	hwæm	hwæm
A.	hwone	hwæt
I.	—	hwȳ

NOTE 1.—The derivative interrogatives, **hwæðer** (< \*hwā-ðer), *which of two?* and **hwilc** (< \*hwā-lic), *which?* are declined as strong adjectives (§§ 79-82).

NOTE 2.—The instrumental case of **hwā** survives in Mn.E. *why* = *on what account*; the instrumental of the definite article is seen in the adverbial *the: The sooner, the better* = *by how much sooner, by so much better*.

52

NOTE 3.—How were the Mn.E. relative pronouns, *who* and *which*, evolved from the O.E. interrogatives? The change began in early West Saxon with **hwæt** used in indirect questions (Wūlfing, *l.c.* § 310, β): **Nū ic wāt eall hwæt ðū woldest**, *Now I know all that thou desiredst*. The direct question was, **Hwæt woldest ðū?** But the presence of **eall** shows that in Alfred's mind **hwæt** was, in the indirect form, more relative than interrogative.

(4) Relative Pronouns.

75. O.E. had no relative pronoun proper. It used instead (1) the Indeclinable Particle **ðe**, *who, whom, which, that*, (2) the Definite Article (§ 28), (3) the Definite Article with the Indeclinable Particle, (4) the Indeclinable Particle with a Personal Pronoun.

The Definite Article agrees in gender and number with the antecedent. The case depends upon the construction. *The bird which I have* may, therefore, be:—

- (1) **Sē fugol ðe ic hæbbe;**
- (2) **Sē fugol ðone ic hæbbe;**
- (3) **Sē fugol ðone ðe (= the which) ic hæbbe;**
- (4) **Sē fugol ðe hine ic hæbbe.**

NOTE.—O.E. **ðe** agrees closely in construction with Mn.E. relative *that*: (1) Both are indeclinable. (2) Both refer to animate or inanimate objects. (3) Both may be used with phrasal value: **ðȳ ylcan dæge ðe hi hine tō ðæm āde beran wyllað**, *On the same day that (= on which) they intend to bear him to the funeral pile*. (4) Neither can be preceded by a preposition.

(5) Possessive Pronouns.

76. The Possessive Pronouns are **mīn**, *mine*; **ðīn**, *thine*; **ūre**, *our*; **ēower**, *your*; [**sīn**, *his, her, its*]; **uncer**, *belonging to us two*; **incer**, *belonging to you two*. They are declined as strong adjectives. The genitives of the Third Personal Pronoun, **his**, *his*, **hiere**, *her*, **hiera**, *their*, are indeclinable.

53

(6) Indefinite Pronouns.

77. These are **ælc**, *each, every*; **ān**, *a, an, one*; **ænig** (< **ān-ig**), *any*; **nænig** (< **ne-ænig**), *none*; **ōðer**, *other*; **sum**, *one, a certain one*; **swilc**, *such*. They are declined as strong adjectives.

NOTE.—O.E. had three established methods of converting an interrogative pronoun into an indefinite: (1) By prefixing **ge**, (2) by prefixing **æg**, (3) by interposing the interrogative between **swā ... swā**: (1) **gehwā**, *each*; **gehwæðer**, *either*; **gehwilc**, *each*; (2) **æghwā**, *each*; **æghwæðer**, *each*; **æghwilc**, *each*; (3) **swā hwā swā**, *whosoever*; **swā hwæðer swā**, *whichever of two*; **swā hwilc swā**, *whosoever*.



CHAPTER XIV.

ADJECTIVES, STRONG AND WEAK.

78. The declension of adjectives conforms in general to the declension of nouns, though a few pronominal inflections have influenced certain cases. Adjectives belong either to (1) the Strong Declension or to (2) the Weak Declension. The Weak Declension is employed when the adjective is preceded by **sē** or **ðēs**, *the, that, or this*; otherwise, the Strong Declension is employed: **ðā gōðan cyningas**, *the good kings*; **ðēs gōða cyning**, *this good king*; but **gōde cyningas**, *good kings*.

NOTE.—The Weak Declension is also frequently used when the adjective is employed in direct

### (1) Strong Declension of Adjectives.

#### (a) Monosyllables.

79. The strong adjectives are chiefly monosyllabic with long stems: **gōd**, *good*; **eald**, *old*; **lōng**, *long*; **swift**, *swift*. They are declined as follows.

80. Paradigm of **gōd**, *good*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	gōd	gōd	gōd
<i>G.</i>	gōdes	gōdre	gōdes
<i>D.</i>	gōdum	gōdre	gōdum
<i>A.</i>	gōdne	gōde	gōd
<i>I.</i>	gōde	—	gōde
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	gōde	gōda	gōd
<i>G.</i>	gōdra	gōdra	gōdra
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdum	gōdum	gōdum

81. If the stem is short, **-u** is retained as in **giefu** (§ 39, (1)) and **hofu** (§ 33, (1)). Thus **glæd** (§ 27, Note 1), *glad*, and **til**, *useful*, are inflected:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	{ glæd til	{ gladu tilu	{ glæd til
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	{ glade tile	{ glada tila	{ gladu tilu

#### (b) Polysyllables.

82. Polysyllables follow the declension of short monosyllables. The most common terminations are **-en**, *-en*; **-fæst**, *-fast*; **-full**, *-ful*; **-lēas**, *-less*; **-lic**, *-ly*; **-ig**, *-y*: **hæð-en** (**hæð** = *heath*), *heathen*; **stēde-fæst** (**stēde** = *place*), *steadfast*; **sorg-full** (**sorg** = *sorrow*), *sorrowful*; **cyst-lēas** (**cyst** = *worth*), *worthless*; **eorð-lic** (**eorðe** = *earth*), *earthly*; **blōd-ig** (**blōd** = *blood*), *bloody*. The present and past participles, when inflected and not as weak adjectives, may be classed with the polysyllabic adjectives, their inflection being the same.

55

Syncopation occurs as in **a**-stems (§ 27, (4)). Thus **hālig**, *holy*, **blīðe**, *blithe*, **berende**, *bearing*, **geboren**, *born*, are thus inflected:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	{ hālig blīðe berende geboren	{ hālgu blīðu berende geborenu	{ hālig blīðe berende geboren
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	{ hālg blīðe berende geborene	{ hālga blīða berenda geborena	{ hālg blīðu berendu geborenu

### (2) Weak Declension of Adjectives.

83. The Weak Declension of adjectives, whether monosyllabic or polysyllabic, does not differ from the Weak Declension of nouns, except that **-ena** of the genitive plural is usually replaced by **-ra** of the strong adjectives.

84.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	gōda	gōde	gōde
<i>G.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
<i>A.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōde
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	gōdan		
<i>G.</i>	gōdra (gōdena)		
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdum		

85. **Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; but participles, when used predicatively, may remain uninflected** (§ 139, § 140).

RULE OF SYNTAX.

56

86. **VOCABULARY.**

**dēad**, *dead*.  
**eall**, *all*.

**hāl**, <sup>1</sup> *whole, hale*.  
**heard**, *hard*.  
**ðæt hors**, *horse*.  
**lēof**, *dear* [as *lief*].  
**lytel**, *little*.  
**micel**, *great, large*.  
**mōnig**, *many*.  
**niman**, *to take* [nimble, numb].  
**nīwe**, *new*.  
**rīce**, *rich, powerful*.  
**sōð**, *true* [sooth-sayer].  
**stælwierðe**, <sup>2</sup> *serviceable* [stalwart].  
**swīðe**, *very*.  
**sē tūn**, *town, village*.  
**sē ðegn**, *servant, thane, warrior*.  
**ðæt ðing**, *thing*.  
**sē weg**, *way*.  
**wīs**, *wise*.  
**wið** (with acc.), *against*, in a hostile sense [with-stand].  
**sē ilca**, *the same* [of that ilk].

87.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðās scipu ne sind swīðe swift, ac hīe sind swīðe stælwierðu. 2. Sēo gōde cwēn giefð ælcum ðegne mōniga giefā. 3. Ðēs wīsa cyning hæfð mōnige mīcele tūnas on his rīce. 4. Nænig mōn is wīs on eallum ðingum. 5. Ðy ilcan dæge (§ 98, (2)) mōn fōnd (found) ðone ðegn ðe mīnes wīnes bēc hæfde. 6. Ealle ðā secgas ðā ðe swift hors habbað rīdað wið ðone bōnan. 7. Ðīne fiend sind mīne frīend. 8. Sē micela stān ðone ðe ic on mīnum hōndum hæbbe is swīðe heard. 9. Hīe sceððað ðæm ealdum horsum. 10. Uton niman ðās tilan giefā oñd hīe beran tō ūrum lēofum bearnum.

57

II. 1. These holy men are wise and good. 2. Are the little children very dear to the servants (dat. without **tō**)? 3. Gifts are not given (§ 70, Note 1) to rich men. 4. All the horses that are in the king's fields are swift. 5. These stones are very large and hard. 6. He takes the dead man's spear and fights against the large army. 7. This new house has many doors. 8. My ways are not your ways. 9. Whosoever chooses me, him I also (**ēac**) choose. 10. Every man has many friends that are not wise.

1. **Hālig**, *holy*, contains, of course, the same root. "I find," says Carlyle, "that you could not get any better definition of what 'holy' really is than 'healthy—completely healthy.'"

2. This word has been much discussed. The older etymologists explained it as meaning *worth stealing*. A more improbable conjecture is that it means *worth a stall or place*. It is used of ships in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. As applied to men, Skeat thinks it meant *good* or *worthy at stealing*; but the etymology is still unsettled.



CHAPTER XV.

NUMERALS.

88. Numerals are either (a) Cardinal, expressing pure number, *one, two, three*; or (b) Ordinal, expressing rank or succession, *first, second, third*.

(a) Cardinals.

89. The Cardinals fall into the three following syntactic groups:

GROUP I.

1. ān
2. twēgen [twain]
3. ðrīe

These numerals are inflected adjectives. **Ān**, *one, an, a*, being a long stemmed monosyllable, is declined like **gōd** (§ 80). The weak form, **āna**, means *alone*.

**Twēgen** and **ðrīe**, which have no singular, are thus declined:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	twēgen	twā	twā (tū)	ðrīe	ðrēo	ðrēo
<i>G.</i>	twēgra	twēgra	twēgra	ðrēora	ðrēora	ðrēora
<i>D.</i>	{ twæm	{ twæm	{ twæm	{ ðrīm	{ ðrīm	{ ðrīm
	(twām)	(twām)	(twām)			

58

4. fēower
5. fif
6. siex
7. seofon
8. eahta
9. nigon
10. tien
11. ęndlefan
12. twelf
13. ęręotiene
14. fęowertiene
15. fiftiene
16. siextiene
17. seofontiene
18. eahtatiene
19. nigontiene

These words are used chiefly as uninflected adjectives: **on gewitscipe ęręora oþþe fęower bisceopa**, *on testimony of three or four bishops*; **on siex dagum**, *in six days*; **ān nędre ę hęfde nigon hęafdu**, *a serpent which had nine heads*; **ęđeling eahtatiene wintra**, *a prince of eighteen winters*.

## 91.

## GROUP III.

20. twęntig
21. ān ęnd twęntig
30. ęritig
40. fęowertig
50. fiftig
60. siextig
70. hundseofontig
80. hundeahtatig
90. hundnigontig
100. hund
200. twā hund
1000. ęsęnd
2000. twā ęsęnd

All these numbers are employed as neuter singular nouns, and are followed by the genitive plural: **Nęfde hę þęah mę ęonne twęntig hręđera**, and **twęntig scęapa**, and **twęntig swęna**, *He did not have, however, more than twenty (of) cattle, and twenty (of) sheep, and twenty (of) swine*; **Hię hęfdon hundeahtatig scipa**, *They had eighty ships*; **twā hund męla brād**, *two hundred miles broad*; **ęđę węron seofon hund gęđfanena genumen**, *there were seven hundred standards captured*; **ān ęsęnd męnna**, *a thousand men*; **Hannibales folces węs twā ęsęnd ofslagen**, *Of Hannibal's men there were two thousand slain*; **Hię ācuron ęndlefan ęsęnd męnna**, *They chose eleven thousand men*.

NOTE 1.—Group III is rarely inflected. Almost the only inflectional endings that are added are (1) **-es**, a genitive singular termination for the numerals in **-tig**, and (2) **-e**, a dative singular for **hund**. (1) The first is confined to adjectives expressing extent of space or time, as, **eald**, *old*; **brād**, *broad*; **hęah**, *high*; and **lęng**, *long*: **ęđę is ęritiges męla lęng**, *that is thirty miles long*; **Hę węs ęritiges gęara eald**, *He was thirty years old*. (2) The second is employed after **mid**: **mid twęm hundę scipa**, *with two hundred ships*; **mid ęrim hundę męnna**, *with three hundred men*; **ęđę wearđ ... Regulus gefangen mid V hundę męnna**, *There was Regulus captured with five hundred men*.

The statement made in nearly all the grammars that **hundę** occurs as a nominative and accusative plural is without foundation.

NOTE 2.—Many numerals, otherwise indeclinable, are used in the genitive plural with the indefinite pronoun **sum**, which then means *one of* a certain number. In this peculiar construction, the numeral always precedes **sum**: **fęowera sum**, *one of four (= with three others)*; **Hę sęde þęt hę syxa sum ofslęge syxtig**, *He said that he, with five others, slew sixty (whales)*; **Hę węs fęowertigra sum**, *He was one of forty*.

NOTE 3.—These are the most common constructions with the Cardinals. The forms in **-tig** have only recently been investigated. A study of Wulfing's citations shows that Alfred occasionally uses the forms in **-tig** (1) as adjectives with plural inflections: **mid XXXgum cyningum**, *with thirty kings*; and (2) as nouns with plural inflections: **ęfter siextigum daga**, *after sixty days*. But both constructions are rare.

## (b) Ordinals.

92. The Ordinals, except the first two, are formed from the Cardinals. They are:

1. forma, ęresta, fyrsta
2. ęđę, ęfterra
3. ęridda
4. fęorđa
5. fifta

6. siexta
7. seofōða
8. eahtoða
9. nigoða
10. tēoða
11. ęndlefta
12. twelfta
13. őrēotēoða
14. fēowertēoða
15. fiftēoða  
etc.
20. twēntigoða
21. ān ęnd twēntigoða
30. őrītigoða  
etc.

NOTE.—There are no Ordinals corresponding to **hund** and **đūsend**.

With the exception of **ōđer** (§ 77), all the Ordinals are declined as Weak Adjectives; the article, however, as in Mn.E., is frequently omitted: **Brūtus wæs sē forma consul**, *Brutus was the first consul*; **Hēr ęndađ sēo ęreste bōc, ęnd onginneđ sēo ődەر**, *Here the first book ends, and the second begins*; **đý fiftan dæge**, *on the fifth day*; **on đæm tēođan gēare hiera gewinnes**, *in the tenth year of their strife*; **Hēo wæs twelfte**, *She was twelfth*; **Sē wæs fēorða fręm Augusto**, *He was fourth from Augustus*.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

#### Adverbs.

**93.** (1) Adverbs are formed by adding **-e** or **-lice** to the corresponding adjectives: **sōđ**, *true*; **sōđe** or **sōđlice**, *truly*; **earmlīc**, *wretched*; **earmlīce**, *wretchedly*; **wīd**, *wide*; **wīde**, *widely*; **micel**, *great*; **mīcle** (**mīcele**), *greatly, much*.

61

(2) The terminations **-e** and **-lice** are replaced in some adverbs by **-(l)unga** or **-(l)inga**: **eallunga**, *entirely*; **fāringa**, *suddenly*; **grundlunga**, *from the ground, completely*.

NOTE 1.—In Mn.E. *headlong*, *darkling*, and *groveling*, originally adverbs, we have survivals of these endings.

(3) The genitive case is frequently used adverbially: **sūđewardes**, *southwards*; **ealles**, *altogether, entirely*; **dæges**, *by day*; **nihtes**, *by night*; **đæs**, *from that time, afterwards*. Cf. **hys** (= **his**) **weges** in **Đonne rīdeđ ęlc hys wegес**, *Then rides each his way*.

NOTE 2.—The adverbial genitive is abundantly preserved in Mn.E. *Always, crossways, sideways, needs* (= *necessarily*), *sometimes*, etc., are not plurals, but old genitive singulars. The same construction is seen in *of course, of a truth, of an evening, of old, of late*, and similar phrases.

(4) Dative and instrumental plurals may be used as adverbs: **hwīlum**, *at times, sometimes* [whilom]; **stundum** (**stund** = *period*), *from time to time*; **mīclum**, *greatly*. Especially common is the suffix **-mælum** (**mæ**l = *time, measure* [meal]), preserved adverbially in Mn.E. *piecemeal*: **dropmælum**, *drop by drop*; **styccemælum** (**stycce** = *piece*), *piecemeal, here and there*.

(5) The suffix **-an** usually denotes motion from:

<b>hēr</b> , <i>here.</i>	<b>hīder</b> , <i>hither.</i>	<b>heonan</b> , <i>hence.</i>
<b>đær</b> , <i>there.</i>	<b>đīder</b> , <i>thither.</i>	<b>đonan</b> , <i>thence.</i>
<b>hwær</b> , <i>where?</i>	<b>hwīder</b> , <i>whither?</i>	<b>hwonan</b> , <i>whence?</i>
		<b>norđan</b> , <i>from the north.</i>
		<b>ēastan</b> , <i>from the east.</i>
		<b>hindan</b> , <i>from behind.</i>
		<b>feorran</b> , <i>from far.</i>
		<b>ūtan</b> , <i>from without.</i>

(6) The adverb **rihte** (**riht** = *right, straight*) denotes *motion toward* in **norđrihte**, *northward, due north*; **ēastrihte**, *due east*; **sūđrihte**, *due south*; **westrihte**, *due west*.

62

#### Prepositions.

**94.** The nominative is the only case in O.E. that is never governed by a preposition. Of the other cases, the dative and accusative occur most frequently with prepositions.

(1) The prepositions that are most frequently found with the dative are:

**æfter**, *after.*  
**æt**, *at.*  
**be** (**bī**), *by, near, about.*

**betwēonan (betuh)**, *between*.  
**būtan (būton)**, *except*.  
**for**, *for*.  
**frōm (fram)**, *from, by*.  
**mid**, *with*.  
**of**, *of, from*.  
**tō**, *to*.  
**tōforan**, *before*.  
**tōweard**, *toward*.

(2) The following prepositions require the accusative:

**geond**, *throughout* [be-yond].  
**ofer**, *over, upon*.  
**oð**, *until, up to*.  
**ðurh**, *through*.  
**ymbe**, *about, around* [um-while, ember-days].

(3) The preposition **on** (rarely **in**), meaning *into*, is usually followed by the accusative; but meaning *in, on, or during*, it takes the dative or instrumental. The preposition **wið**, meaning *toward*, may be followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative; but meaning *against*, and implying *motion* or *hostility*, the accusative is more common.

(4) The following phrases are used prepositionally with the dative:

**be norðan**, *north of*.  
**be ēastan**, *east of*.  
**be sūðan**, *south of*.  
**be westan**, *west of*.  
**tō ēacan**, *in addition to*.  
**on emnlange (efn-lang = evenly long)**, *along*.  
**tō emnes**, *along*.

(5) Prepositions regularly precede the noun or pronoun that they introduce; but by their adverbial nature they are sometimes drawn in front of the verb: **And him was mycel menegu tō gegaderod**, *And there was gathered unto him a great multitude*. In relative clauses introduced by **ðe**, the preceding position is very common: **sēo scīr ... ðe hē on būde**, *the district, ... which he dwelt in (= which he in-habited)*; **Hē was swyðe spēdig man on ðām āhtum ðe hiera spēda on bēoð**, *He was a very rich man in those possessions which their riches consist in*; **nȳhst ðām tūne ðe sē dēada man on lið**, *nearest the town that the dead man lies in*.

### Conjunctions.

95. (1) The most frequently occurring conjunctions are:

**ac**, *but*.  
**ǣr**, *before, ere*.  
**būtan (būton)**, *except that, unless*.  
**ēac**, *also* [eke].  
**for ðām**,  
**for ðām ðe**,  
**for ðon**,  
**for ðon ðe**,  
**for ðȳ**, *therefore*.  
**gif**, *if*.  
**hwæðer**, *whether*.  
**ond (and)**, *and*.  
**oððe**, *or*.  
**ðæt**, *that, so that*.  
**ðēah**, *though, however*.

} *because*.

(2) The correlative conjunctions are:

<b>ǣgðer ge</b> . . . .	<b>ge</b> ,	<i>both . . . . . and.</i>
<b>ǣgðer</b> . . . . .	<b>oðer</b>	} <i>either . . . . . or.</i>
<b>oððe</b> . . . . .	<b>oððe</b>	
<b>nē</b> . . . . .	<b>nē</b> ,	<i>neither . . . . . nor.</i>
<b>sam</b> . . . . .	<b>sam</b> ,	<i>whether . . . . . or.</i>
<b>swā</b> . . . . .	<b>swā</b>	} <i>the . . . . . the.</i> <i>as . . . . . as.</i>
<b>ðā</b> . . . . .	<b>ðā</b>	
<b>ðonne</b> . . . . .	<b>ðonne</b>	} <i>when . . . . . then.</i>

## CHAPTER XVII.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

## Adjectives.

96. (1) Adjectives are regularly compared by adding **-ra** for the comparative, and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>earm</b> , <i>poor</i>	<b>earmra</b>	<b>earmost</b>
<b>rīce</b> , <i>rich</i>	<b>rīcra</b>	<b>rīcost</b>
<b>smæel</b> , <i>narrow</i>	<b>smælra</b>	<b>smalost</b>
<b>brād</b> , <i>broad</i>	<b>brādra</b> ( <b>brædra</b> )	<b>brādost</b>
<b>swift</b> , <i>swift</i>	<b>swiftra</b>	<b>swiftost</b>

(2) Forms with **i**-umlaut usually have superlative in **-est**:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>eald</b> , <i>old</i>	<b>ieldra</b>	<b>ieldest</b>
<b>lōng</b> , <i>long</i>	<b>lēngra</b>	<b>lēngest</b>
<b>strōng</b> , <i>strong</i>	<b>strēngra</b>	<b>strēngest</b>
<b>geong</b> , <i>young</i>	<b>giengra</b>	<b>giengest</b>
<b>hēah</b> , <i>high</i>	<b>hierra</b>	<b>hiehst</b>

(3) The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>gōd</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>bętra</b>	<b>bętst</b>
<b>lýt</b> , <i>little, small</i>	<b>lāssa</b>	<b>lāest</b>
<b>micel</b> , <i>great, much</i>	<b>māra</b>	<b>māest</b>
<b>yfel</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>wiersa</b>	<b>wierst</b>

65

(4) The positive is sometimes supplied by an adverb:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>feor</b> , <i>far</i>	<b>fierra</b>	<b>fierrest</b>
<b>nēah</b> , <i>near</i>	<b>nēarra</b>	<b>niehst</b>
<b>āer</b> , <i>before</i>	<b>āerra</b> , <i>former</i>	<b>āerest</b> , <i>first</i>

(5) The comparatives all follow the Weak Declension. The superlatives, when preceded by the definite article, are weak; but when used predicatively they are frequently strong: **sē lāesta dāel**, *the least part*; **Đonne cymeð sē man sē ðæt swiftoste hors hafað tō ðæm ārestan dāle and tō ðæm māstan**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse to the first part and to the largest*. But, **ðæt býne land is ēasteward brādost** (not **brādoste**), *the cultivated land is broadest eastward*; and (**hit**) **bið ealra wyrta māest**, *and it is largest of all herbs*; **Ac hyra** (= **hiera**) **ār is māest on ðæm gafole ðe ðā Finnas him gyldað**, *But their income is greatest in the tribute that the Fins pay them*.

(6) The comparative is usually followed by **ðonne** and the nominative case: **Sē hwæl bið micle lāssa ðonne oðre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; **Đā wunda ðæs mōdes beoð digelran ðonne ðā wunda ðæs lichaman**. *The wounds of the mind are more secret than the wounds of the body*.

But when **ðonne** is omitted, the comparative is followed by the dative: **Ūre Āliesend, ðe māra is onð mārera eallum gesceaftum**, *Our Redeemer, who is greater and more glorious than all created things*; **nē ongeat hē nō hiene selfne bętran oðrum gōdum mōnnum**, *nor did he consider himself better than other good men*.

66

## Adverbs.

97. (1) Adverbs are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>georne</b> , <i>willingly</i>	<b>geornor</b>	<b>geornost</b>
<b>swiðe</b> , <i>very, severely</i>	<b>swiðor</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>swiðost</b> , <i>most, chiefly</i>
<b>āer</b> , <i>before</i>	<b>āeror</b> , <i>formerly</i>	<b>āerest</b> , <i>first</i>
<b>norð</b> , <i>northwards</i>	<b>norðor</b>	<b>norðmest</b> <sup>1</sup>

(2) The comparatives of a few adverbs may be found by dropping **-ra** of the corresponding adjective form:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>lōnge</b> , <i>long</i>	<b>lēng</b>	<b>lēngest</b>
<b>micle</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>mā</b>	<b>māest</b>
<b>wel</b> , <i>well</i>	<b>bęt</b>	<b>bętst</b>

## Expressions of Time.

98. (1) Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative case: **Ealle ðā hwile ðe ðæt lic bið inne**, *All the time that the body is within*; **twēgen dagas**, *for two days*; **ealne weg**, *all the way, always*.

(2) Time when is more often expressed by the instrumental case when no preposition is used: **ðý ilcan dæge**, *the same day*; **ælc gēare**, *each year*; **ðý gēare**, *that year*; **ælc dæge**, *each day*.

(3) Time or space within which is expressed by **on** and the dative: **on sumera**, *in summer*; **on wintra**, *in winter*; **on fif dagum**, *in five days*; **on fif mīlum**, *in five miles*; **on ðissum gēare**, *in this year*; **on ðæm tīman**, *in those times*. Sometimes by the genitive without a preceding preposition: **ðæs gēares**, *in that year*.

99.

VOCABULARY.

**ðæt gefylce** [**folc**], *troop, division*.

**ðæt lōnd** (**land**), *land*.

**sēo mīl**, *mile*.

**ōðer ... oðer**, *the one ... the other; the former ... the latter*.

**sē sige**, *victory*.

**sige**<sup>2</sup> **habban**, *to win (the) victory*.

**sprecan**, *to speak*.

**ðæt swīn** (**swyn**), *swine, hog*.

**wēste**, *waste*.

100.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hæfð ðrēo swīðe swift hors. 2. Ic hæbbe nigontiene scēap ond mā ðonne twēntig swīna. 3. Sēo gōde cwēn cīest twā hund mōnna. 4. Uton feohtan wið ðā Dene mid ðrīm hunde scipa. 5. Ond hīe wæron on twæm gefylcum: on oðrum wæs<sup>3</sup> Bāchsęcg ond Halfdene ðā hæðnan cyningas, ond on oðrum wæron ðā eorlas. 6. Ðū spricst sōðlice. 7. Ðonne rīt ælc mōn his weg. 8. Æfter mōnigum dagum, hæfde Ælfred cyning<sup>4</sup> sige. 9. Ðis lōnd is wēste stycemælum. 10. Ðēs feld is fiftiges mīla brād. 11. Ælfred cyning hæfde mōnige frīend, for ðæm ðe hē wæs ægðer ge wīs ge gōd. 12. Ðā hwalas, ðe ðū ymbe spricst, sind micle læssan oðrum hwalum. 13. Hēo is ieldre ðonne hiere swuster, ac mīn brōðor is ieldra ðonne hēo. 14. Wē cumað tō ðæm tūne ælc gēare. 15. Ðā mēn ðe ðā swiftostan hors hæfdon wæron mid ðæm Denum fēower dagas.

II. 1. Our army (**werod**) was in two divisions: one was large, the other was small. 2. The richest men in the kingdom have more (**mā**) than thirty ships. 3. He was much wiser than his brother. 4. He fights against the Northumbrians with two ships. 5. After three years King Alfred gained the victory. 6. Whosoever chooses these gifts, chooses well. 7. This man's son is both wiser and better than his father. 8. When the king rides, then ride his thanes also. 9. The richest men are not always (**ā**) the wisest men.

1. This is really a double superlative, **m** being itself an old superlative suffix. Cf. Latin *opti-m-us*. In Mn.E. *northmost* and *hindmost*, *-m-est* has been confused with *-most*, with which etymologically it has nothing to do.

2. **Sige** usually, but not invariably, precedes **habban**.

3. See p. 100, [note on gefeaht](#).

4. The proper noun comes first in appositive expressions: **Ælfred cyning, Sidroc eorl, Hēahmund bisceop**.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### STRONG VERBS: CLASS I. (See § 17.)

#### Syntax of Moods.

**101.** Of the three hundred simple verbs belonging to the O.E. Strong Conjugation, it is estimated<sup>1</sup> that seventy-eight have preserved their strong inflections in Mn.E., that eighty-eight have become weak, and that the remaining one hundred and thirty-four have entirely disappeared, their places being taken in most cases by verbs of Latin origin introduced through the Norman-French.

NOTE.—Only the simple or primitive verbs, not the compound forms, are here taken into consideration. The proportionate loss, therefore, is really much greater. O.E. abounded in formative prefixes. "Thus from the Anglo-Saxon **flōwan**, *to flow*, ten new compounds were formed by the addition of various prefixes, of which ten, only one, **oferflōwan**, *to overflow*, survives with us. In a similar manner, from the verb **sittan**, *to sit*, thirteen new verbs were formed, of which not a single one is to be found to-day." Lounsbury, *ib.* Part I, p. 107.

102.

#### Class I: The "Drive" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **ī, ā, i, i.**

INFINITIVE.	PRETERIT SING.	PRETERIT PLUR.	PAST PART.
<b>Drif-an</b>	<b>drāf</b>	<b>drif-on</b>	<b>gedrif-en</b> , <i>to drive</i> .



Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic drīf-e	} (drīf-að)	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} drīf-e
2. ðū drīf-st (drīf-est)		2. ðū	
3. hē drīf-ð (drīf-eð)		3. hē	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} (drīf-að)	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} drīf-en
2. gē		2. gē	
3. hīe		3. hīe	
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic drāf	} drif-on	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} drif-e
2. ðū drif-e		2. ðū	
3. hē drāf		3. hē	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} drif-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} drif-en
2. gē		2. gē	
3. hīe		3. hīe	
<b>Imperative.</b>	<b>Infinitive.</b>	<b>Present Participle.</b>	
<i>Sing.</i> 2. drīf	drīf-an	drīf-ende	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. drīf-an			
2. drīf-að	<b>Gerund.</b>	<b>Past Participle.</b>	
	tō drīf-anne (-enne)	gedrif-en	

### Tense Formation of Strong Verbs.

**103.** (1) It will be seen from the conjugation of **drīfan** that the *present stem* in all strong verbs is used throughout the present indicative, the present subjunctive, the imperative, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle. More than half of the endings, therefore, of the Strong Conjugation are added directly to the present stem.

(2) That the *preterit singular stem* is used in only two forms of the verb, the 1st and 3d persons singular of the preterit indicative: **Ic drāf, hē drāf.**

(3) That the *preterit plural stem* is used in the preterit plural indicative, in the second person of the preterit singular indicative, and in the singular and plural of the preterit subjunctive.

(4) That the *stem of the past participle (gedrif-)* is used for no other form.

### Syntax of the Verb.

**104.** The Indicative Mood<sup>2</sup> represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is used both in independent and in dependent clauses, its function in O.E. corresponding with its function in Mn.E.

**105.** The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*.<sup>3</sup> It is of far more frequent occurrence in O.E. than in Mn.E.

1. When used in independent clauses it denotes desire, command, or entreaty, and usually precedes its subject: **Sie ðin nama gehālgod**, *Hallowed be Thy name*; **Ne swerigen gē**, *Do not swear*.

2. In dependent clauses it denotes uncertainty, possibility, or mere futurity.<sup>4</sup> (a) Concessive clauses (introduced by **ðeah**, *though*) and (b) temporal clauses (introduced by **ær**, **ær ðæm ðe**, *before*) are rarely found with any other mood than the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also regularly used in Alfredian prose (c) after verbs of saying, even when no suggestion of doubt or discredit attaches to the narration.<sup>5</sup> "Whether the statement refer to a fact or not, whether the subject-matter be vouched for by the reporter, as regards its objective reality and truth, the subjunctive does not tell. It simply represents a statement as reported"<sup>6</sup>: **ðeah man āsette twēgen fātels full ealað oððe wæteres**, *though one set two vessels full of ale or water*; **ær ðæm ðe hit eall forhergod wære**, *before it was all ravaged*; **Hē sæde ðæt Norðmanna land wære swýðe lang and swýðe smæl**, *He said that the Norwegians' land was very long and very narrow*.

**106.** The Imperative is the mood of command or intercession: **Iōhannes, cum tō mē**, *John, come to me*; **And forgyf ūs ūre gyltas**, *And forgive us our trespasses*; **Ne drif ūs fram ðē**, *Do not drive us from thee*.

**107.** (1) The Infinitive and Participles are used chiefly in verb-phrases (§§ 138-141); but apart from this function, the Infinitive, being a neuter noun, may serve as the subject or direct object of a verb. **Hātan** (*to command, bid*), **lāetan** (*to let, permit*), and **onginnan** (*to begin*) are regularly followed by the Infinitive: **Hine rīdan lyste**, *To ride pleased him*; **Hēt ðā bære settan**, *He bade set down the bier*; **Lætað ðā lýtlingas tō mē cuman**, *Let the little ones come to me*; **ðā ongann hē spreca**, *then began he to speak*.

(2) The Participles may be used independently in the dative absolute construction (an imitation of the Latin ablative absolute), usually for the expression of time: **Him ðā gýt sprecedum**, *While he was yet speaking*; **gefylledum dagum**, *the days having been fulfilled*.

108. The Gerund, or Gerundial Infinitive, is used:

(1) To express purpose: **Ūt ēode sē sāwere his sād tō sāwenne**, *Out went the sower his seed to sow.*

(2) To expand or determine the meaning of a noun or adjective: **Sýmōn, ic hæbbe ðē tō sęcgenne sum ðing**, *Simon, I have something to say to thee*; **Hit is sčondlic ymb swelc tō spreccanne**, *It is shameful to speak about such things.*

(3) After **bēon (wesan)** to denote duty or necessity: **Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðis tō spreccanne**, *What more is there now to say about this?* **ðonne is tō geðencenne hwaet Crīst self cwæð**, *then it behooves to bethink what Christ himself said.*

NOTE.—The Gerund is simply the dative case of the Infinitive after **tō**. It began very early to supplant the simple Infinitive; hence the use of *to* with the Infinitive in Mn.E. As late as the Elizabethan age the Gerund sometimes replaced the Infinitive even after the auxiliary verbs:

“Some pagan shore,  
Where these two Christian armies *might combine*  
The blood of malice in a vein of league,  
And not *to spend* it so unneighbourly.”

—*King John*, V, II, 39.

NOTE.—The Gerund is simply the When *to* lost the meaning of purpose and came to be considered as a merely formal prefix, *for* was used to supplement the purpose element: *What went ye out for to see?*<sup>9</sup>

1. Lounsbury, *English Language*, Part II, § 241.
2. Usage sanctions *mood*, but the better spelling would be *mode*. It is from the Lat. *modus*, whereas *mood* (= *temper*) is O.E. *mōd*.
3. Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar*, § 255.
4. Thus when Alfred writes that an event took place *before* the founding of Rome, he uses the subjunctive: **ǣr ðǣm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wære** = *before Rome were founded*; but, **ǣfter ðǣm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wæs** = *after Rome was founded*.
5. “By the time of Ælfric, however, the levelling influence of the indicative [after verbs of saying] has made considerable progress.”—Gorrell, *Indirect Discourse in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1895), p. 101.
6. Hotz, *On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Anglo-Saxon* (Zürich, 1882).
7. Not, *He commanded the bier to be set down*. The Mn.E. passive in such sentences is a loss both in force and directness.
8. Callaway, *The Absolute Participle in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1889), p. 19.
9. This is not the place to discuss the Gerund in Mn.E., the so-called “infinitive in *-ing*.” The whole subject has been befogged for the lack of an accepted nomenclature, one that shall do violence neither to grammar nor to history.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### STRONG VERBS: CLASSES II AND III.

#### 109. Class II: The “Choose” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **ēo, ēa, u, o.**

INFINITIVE. <sup>1</sup> PRET. SING. PRET. PLUR. <sup>2</sup> PAST PART. <sup>2</sup>  
**cēos-an, cēas, cur-on gecor-en, to choose.**

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic cēos-e	} cēos-e	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} cēos-e
2. ðū cīest (cēos-est)		2. ðū	
3. hē cīest (cēos-eð)		3. hē	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} cēos-að	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} cēos-en
2. gē		2. gē	
3. hīe		3. hīe	
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic cēas	} cur-on	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} cur-e
2. ðū cur-e		2. ðū	
3. hē cēas		3. hē	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} cur-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} cur-en
2. gē		2. gē	
3. hīe		3. hīe	

**Imperative. Infinitive. Present Participle.**

*Sing.* 2. cēos                      cēos-an                      cēos-ende

*Plur.* 1. cēos-an

2. cēos-að

**Gerund.**

**Past Participle.**

tō cēos-anne (-enne)

gecor-en

**110. Class III: The "Bind" Conjugation.**

75

Vowel Succession:  $\left. \begin{array}{c} i \\ e \end{array} \right\}, a, u, \left. \begin{array}{c} u \\ o \end{array} \right\}.$

The present stem ends in **m, n, l, r,** or **h,** + one or more consonants:

**m:** **belimp-an,**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{belomp} \\ \text{belamp} \end{array} \right\},$  **belump-on, belump-en, to belong.**

**n:** **bind-an,**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{bōnd} \\ \text{band} \end{array} \right\},$  **bund-on, gebund-en, to bind.**

**l:** **help-an, healp, hulp-on, geholp-en, to help.**

**r:** **weorð-an, wearð, wurd-on, geword-en, to become.**

**h:** **gefoht-an, gefeaht, gefuht-on, gefoht-en, to fight.**

NOTE 1.—If the present stem ends in a nasal (**m, n**) + a consonant, the past participle retains the **u** of the pret. plur.; but if the present stem ends in a liquid (**l, r**) or **h,** + a consonant, the past participle has **o** instead of **u**.

NOTE 2.—Why do we not find **\*halp, \*warð,** and **\*faht** in the pret. sing.? Because **a** before **l, r,** or **h,** + a consonant, underwent "breaking" to **ea**. Breaking also changes every **e** followed by **r** or **h,** + a consonant, to **eo: weorðan** (< **\*werðan**), feohtan (< **\*fehtan**).

**111.**

**Indicative.**

**Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

PRESENT.

*Sing.* 1. Ic bind-e                      *Sing.* 1. Ic } bind-e  
2. ðū binst (bind-est)              2. ðū }  
3. hē bint (bind-eð)                3. hē }

*Plur.* 1. wē } bind-að                      *Plur.* 1. wē } bind-en  
2. gē }  
3. hīe }

PRETERIT.

PRETERIT.

*Sing.* 1. Ic bōnd                      *Sing.* 1. Ic } bund-e  
2. ðū bund-e                        2. ðū }  
3. hē bōnd                            3. hē }

*Plur.* 1. wē } bund-on                      *Plur.* 1. wē } bund-en  
2. gē }  
3. hīe }

**Imperative.**

**Infinitive.**

**Present Participle.**

*Sing.* 2. bind                      bind-an                      bind-ende

*Plur.* 1. bind-an

2. bind-að

**Gerund.**

**Past Participle.**

tō bind-anne (-enne)

gebund-en

**112.**

VOCABULARY.

**ðæt gefeoht,** *fight, battle.*

**sēo geræcednes,** *narration* [ræccan].

**ðæt gesceap,** *creation* [scieppan].

**sēo hęrgung** (§ 39, (3)), *harrying, plundering* [hęrgian].

**sē medu (medo)** (§ 51), *mead.*

**sēo meolc,** *milk.*

**sē middangeard,** *world* [middle-yard].

**sē munuc,** *monk* [monachus].

**sēo mýre,** *mare* [mearh].

**hē sæde,** *he said.*

**hīe sædon,** *they said.*

**sēo spēd,** *riches* [speed].

**spēdig,** *rich, prosperous* [speedy].

**sēo tīd,** *time* [tide].

**unspēdig,** *poor.*

**sē westanwind,** *west-wind.*

**ðæt wīn,** *wine.*

**ārīsan,**                      **ārās,**                      **ārison,**                      **ārīsen,**                      *to arise.*

**bīdan,**                      **bād,**                      **bidon,**                      **gebīden,**                      *to remain, expect* (with gen.)

**drēogan,** <sup>3</sup>                      **drēag,**                      **drugon,**                      **gedrogen,**                      *to endure, suffer.*

**drincan,**                      **drōnc,**                      **druncon,**                      **gedruncen,**                      *to drink.*

**findan,**                      **fōnd,**                      **fundon,**                      **gefunden,**                      *to find.*

76

<b>geswīcan</b>	<b>geswāc,</b>	<b>geswicon,</b>	<b>geswicen,</b>	<i>to cease, cease from (with gen.)</i>
<b>iernan (yrnan),</b>	<b>orn,</b>	<b>urnon,</b>	<b>geurnen,</b>	<i>to run.</i>
<b>onginnan,</b>	<b>ongonn,</b>	<b>ongunnon,</b>	<b>ongunnen,</b>	<i>to begin.</i>
<b>ridan,</b>	<b>rād,</b>	<b>ridon,</b>	<b>geriden,</b>	<i>to ride.</i>
<b>singan,</b>	<b>song,</b>	<b>sungon,</b>	<b>gesungen,</b>	<i>to sing.</i>
<b>writan,</b>	<b>wrāt,</b>	<b>writon,</b>	<b>gewriten,</b>	<i>to write.</i>

EXERCISES.

77

113.

I. 1. Æfter ðissum wordum, sē munuc wrāt ealle ðā geræcednesse on ānre bēc. 2. Ðā eorlas ridon ūp ær ðæm ðe ðā Dene ðæs gefeohtes geswicen. 3. Cædmon song ærest be middangeardes gesceape. 4. Sē cyning on ðā rīcostan men drincað mýran meolc, on ðā unspēdigān drincað medu. 5. On ðā hē arās on ðā sē wind geswāc. 6. Hīe sædon ðæt hīe ðær westwindes biden. 7. Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðās ðing tō sprecanne? 8. Ðā seccgas ongunnon geswīcan ðære hergunga. 9. Ðā bēag ðæt lond ðær ēastryhte, oððe sēo sē in on ðæt lond. 10. Ðās lond belimpað tō, ðæm Englum. 11. Ðeah ðā Dene ealne dæg gefuhten, gīet hæfde Ælfred cyning sige. 12. On ðæs (afterwards) ymbe āne mōnað gefeagt Ælfred cyning wið ealne ðone here æt Wiltūne.

II. 1. The most prosperous men drank mare's milk and wine, but the poor men drank mead. 2. I suffered many things before you began to help me (dat.). 3. About two days afterwards (**Ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas**), the plundering ceased. 4. The king said that he fought against all the army (**here**). 5. Although the Danes remained one month (§ 98, (1)), they did not begin to fight. 6. These gifts belonged to my brother. 7. The earls were glad because their lord was (indicative) with them. 8. What did you find? 9. Then wrote he about (**be**) the wise man's deeds. 10. What more is there to endure?

1. A few verbs of Class II have **ū** instead of **eo** in the infinitive:

**brūcan, brēac, brucon, gebrocen, to enjoy** [brook].  
**būgan, bēag, bugon, gebogen, to bend, bow.**

2. By a law known as Grammatical Change, final **ð, s, and h** of strong verbs generally become **d, r, and g**, respectively, in the preterit plural and past participle.

3. Cf. the Scotch "to dree one's weird" = *to endure one's fate*.



78

CHAPTER XX.

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES IV, V, VI, AND VII.

CONTRACT VERBS.

[The student can now complete the conjugation for himself (§ 103). Only the principal parts will be given.]

114.

**Class IV: The "Bear" Conjugation.**

Vowel Succession: **e, æ, æ, o.**

The present stem ends in **l, r, or m**, no consonant following:

**l:** **hel-an, hæl, hælon, gehol-en, to conceal.**  
**r:** **ber-an, bær, bæron, gebor-en, to bear.**

The two following verbs are slightly irregular:

**m:** { **nim-an, nōm (nam), nōm-on (nām-on), genum-en, to take.**  
**cum-an, c(w)ōm, c(w)ōm-on, gecum-en, to come.**

115.

**Class V: The "Give" Conjugation.**

Succession of Vowels: **e (ie), æ, æ, e.**

The present stem ends in a single consonant, never a liquid or nasal:

**met-an, mæt, mæton, gemet-en, to measure, mete.**  
**gief-an, geaf, gēaf-on, gegief-en, to give.**

NOTE 1.—The palatal consonants, **g, c, and sc**, convert a following **e** into **ie**, **æ** into **ea**, and **æ** into **ēa**. Hence **giefan** (< \***gef**an), **geaf** (< \***gæf**), **gēafon** (< \***gæfon**), **gegiefen** (< \***gegef**en). This change is known as Palatalization. See § 8.

NOTE 2.—The infinitives of the following important verbs are only apparently exceptional:

**biddan, bæd, bædon, gebed-en, to ask for** [bid].  
**licgan, læg, lægon, geleg-en, to lie, extend.**  
**sittan, sæt, sæton, geset-en, to sit.**

The original **e** reappears in the participial stems. It was changed to **i** in the present stems on account of a former **-jan** in the infinitive (**bid-jan**, etc.). See § 61. To the same cause is due the doubling of consonants in the infinitive. All simple consonants in O.E., with the exception of **r**,

79

were doubled after a short vowel, when an original **j** followed.

**116. Class VI: The "Shake" Conjugation.**

Succession of Vowels: **a, ō, ō, a.**

**scac-an, scōc, scōc-on, gescac-en, to shake.**  
**far-an, fōr, fōr-on, gefar-en, to go [fare].**

**117. Class VII: The "Fall" Conjugation.**

Vowel Succession:  $\left. \begin{matrix} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{matrix} \right\}, \bar{e}, \bar{e}, \left. \begin{matrix} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{matrix} \right\};$  or  $\left. \begin{matrix} ea \\ \bar{ea} \\ \bar{o} \end{matrix} \right\}, \bar{e}o, \bar{e}o, \left. \begin{matrix} ea \\ \bar{ea} \\ \bar{o} \end{matrix} \right\}.$

- (1) **hāt-an, hēt, hēt-on, gehāt-en,**  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} to\ call,\ name, \\ command. \end{matrix} \right.$   
**læt-an, lēt, lēt-on, gelæt-en,** *to let.*  
 (2) **feall-an, fēoll, fēoll-on, gefeall-en,** *to fall.*  
**heald-an, hēold, hēold-on, geheald-en,** *to hold.*  
**hēaw-an, hēow, hēow-on, gehēaw-en,** *to hew.*  
**grōw-an, grēow, grēow-on, gegrōw-en,** *to grow.*

NOTE 1.—This class consists of the Reduplicating Verbs; that is, those verbs that originally formed their preterits not by internal vowel change (ablaut), but by prefixing to the present stem the initial consonant + **e** (cf. Gk. λέ-λοιπα and Lat. *dē-dī*). Contraction then took place between the syllabic prefix and the root, the fusion resulting in **ē** or **ēo**: \***he-hat** > **heht** > **hēt**.

NOTE 2.—A peculiar interest attaches to **hāt-an**: the forms **hätte** and **hätton** are the sole remains in O.E. of the original Germanic passive. They are used both as presents and as preterits: **hätte** = *I am* or *was called, he is* or *was called*. No other verb in O.E. could have a passive sense without calling in the aid of the verb *to be* (§ 141).

**Contract Verbs.**

**118.** The few Contract Verbs found in O.E. do not constitute a new class; they fall under Classes I, II, V, VI, and VII, already treated. The present stem ended originally in **h**. This was lost before **-an** of the infinitive, contraction and compensatory lengthening being the result. The following are the most important of these verbs:

Classes.

- I. **ðēon** (< \***ðīhan**), **ðāh, ðig-on,**  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} geðig-en \\ geðung-en \end{matrix} \right\},$  *to thrive.*  
 II. **tēon** (< \***tēohan**), **tēah, tug-on, getog-en,** *to draw, go [tug].*  
 V. **sēon** (< \***sehwan**), **seah, sāw-on, gesew-en,** *to see.*  
 VI. **slēan** (< \***slahan**), **slōh, slōg-on, geslæg-en,** *to slay.*  
 VII. **fōn** (< \***fōhan**), **fēng, fēng-on, gefōng-en,** *to seize [fang].*

**119.** The Present Indicative of these verbs runs as follows (see rules of **i-umlaut**, § 58):

<i>Sing.</i>	1.	Ic	ðēo	tēo	sēo	slēa	fō
	2.	ðū	ðīhst	tīehst	siehst	sliehst	fēhst
	3.	hē	ðīhð	tīehð	siehð	sliehð	fēhð
<i>Plur.</i>	1.	wē	} ðēoð	} tēoð	} sēoð	} slēað	} fōð
	2.	gē					
	3.	hīe					

The other tenses and moods are regularly formed from the given stems.

**120. VOCABULARY.**

- sēo** **æht**, *property, possession* [**āgan**].  
**aweg**, *away* [**on weg**].  
**sēo fierd**, *English army* [**faran**].  
**sē hęre**, *Danish army* [**hęrgian**].  
**on gehwæðre hōnd**, *on both sides*.  
**sige niman** (= **sige habban**), *to win (the) victory*.  
**sēo spræc**, *speech, language*.  
**tō rīce fōn**, *to come to the throne*.<sup>1</sup>

**ðæt wæl** [Val-halla] } *slaughter, carnage.*  
**sē wæslīht,**

- sē weall**, *wall, rampart*.  
**ðæt wildor**, *wild beast, reindeer*.  
**sē wīngæard**, *vineyard*.

- ābreca**n,<sup>2</sup> **ābræc, ābræcon, ābrocen,** *to break down*.  
**cweðan, cwæð, cwædon, gecweden,** *to say* [quoth].  
**gesēon, geseah, gesāwon, gesewen,** *to see*.  
**grōwan, grēow, grēowon, gegrōwen,** *to grow*.  
**ofslēan, ofslōh, ofslōgon, ofslægen,** *to slay*.

**sprecan, spræc, spræcon, gesprecen, to speak.**  
**stelán, stæl, stælon, gestolen, to steal.**  
**stōndan, stōd, stōdon, gestōnden, to stand.**  
**weaxan, wēox, wēoxon, geweaxen, to grow, increase [wax].**

121.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Æfter ðæm sōðlice (indeed) ealle mēn spræcon āne (one) spræce. 2. Qnd hē cwæð: “Ðis is ān folc, qnd ealle hīe sprecað āne spræce.” 3. On sumum stōwum wīngeardas grōwað. 4. Hē hēt ðā nædran ofslēan. 5. Ðā Engle ābræcon ðone lōngan weall, qnd sige nōmon. 6. Qnd ðæt sæd grēow qnd wēox. 7. Ic ne geseah ðone mōn sē ðe ðæs cnapan adesan stæl. 8. Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on ðæm æhtum ðe hiera spēda on<sup>3</sup> bēoð, ðæt is, on wiltrum. 9. Qnd ðær wearð (was) micel wælsliht on gehwæðre hōnd. 10. Qnd æfter ðissum gefeohte cōm Ælfred cyning mid his fierde, qnd gefeaht wið ealne ðone hēre, qnd sige nōm. 11. Ðeos burg hātte<sup>4</sup> Æscesdūn (Ashdown). 12. Ðære cwēne lic læg on ðæm hūse. 13. Qnd sē dæl ðe ðær aweg cōm wæs swyðe lýt. 14. Qnd ðæs ðrēotiene dagas Æðered tō rice fēng.

II. 1. The men stood in the ships and fought against the Danes. 2. Before the thanes came, the king rode away. 3. They said (**sædon**) that all the men spoke one language. 4. They bore the queen’s body to Wilton. 5. Alfred gave many gifts to his army (dat. without **tō**) before he went away. 6. These men are called earls. 7. God sees all things. 8. The boy held the reindeer with (**mid**) his hands. 9. About six months afterwards, Alfred gained the victory, and came to the throne. 10. He said that there was very great slaughter on both sides.

82

1. Literally, *to take to (the) kingdom*. Cf. “Have you anything to take to?” (*Two Gentlemen of Verona*, IV, 1, 42).

2. **Breacan** belongs properly in Class V, but it has been drawn into Class IV possibly through the influence of the **r** in the root.

3. See § 94, (5).

4. See § 117, Note 2.



CHAPTER XXI.

WEAK VERBS (§ 18).

122. The verbs belonging to the Weak Conjugation are generally of more recent origin than the strong verbs, being frequently formed from the roots of strong verbs. The Weak Conjugation was the growing conjugation in O.E. as it is in Mn.E. We instinctively put our newly coined or borrowed words into this conjugation (*telegraphed, boycotted*); and children, by the analogy of weak verbs, say *runned* for *ran*, *seed* for *saw*, *teared* for *tore*, *drawed* for *drew*, and *growed* for *grew*. So, for example, when Latin *dictāre* and *breviāre* came into O.E., they came as weak verbs, **dihtian** and **brēfian**.

The Three Classes of Weak Verbs.

123. There is no difficulty in telling, from the infinitive alone, to which of the three classes a weak verb belongs. Class III has been so invaded by Class II that but three important verbs remain to it: **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; and **seccgan**, *to say*. Distinction is to be made, therefore, only between Classes II and I. Class II contains the verbs with infinitive in **-ian** not preceded by **r**. Class I contains the remaining weak verbs; that is, those with infinitive in **-rian** and those with infinitive in **-an** (not **-ian**).

83

Class I.

124. The preterit singular and past participle of Class I end in **-ede** and **-ed**, or **-de** and **-ed** respectively.

NOTE.—The infinitives of this class ended originally in **-jan** (= **-ian**). This accounts for the prevalence of **i**-umlaut in these verbs, and also for the large number of short-voweled stems ending in a double consonant (§ 115, Note 2). The weak verb is frequently the causative of the corresponding strong verb. In such cases, the root of the weak verb corresponds in form to the preterit singular of the strong verb: Mn.E. *drench* (= *to make drink*), *lay* (= *to make lie*), *rear* (= *to make rise*), and *set* (= *to make sit*), are the umlauted forms of **drōnc** (preterit singular of **drincan**), **læg** (preterit singular of **licgan**), **rās** (preterit singular of **rīsan**), and **sæt** (preterit singular of **sittan**).

Preterit and Past Participle in **-ede** and **-ed**.

125. Verbs with infinitive in **-an** preceded by **ri-** or the double consonants **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, **cg** (= **gg**), add **-ede** for the preterit, and **-ed** for the past participle, the double consonant being always made single:

<b>ri:</b>	<b>nęri-an,</b>	<b>nęr-ede,</b>	<b>geneę-ed,</b>	<i>to save.</i>
<b>mm:</b>	<b>fręmm-an,</b>	<b>fręm-ede,</b>	<b>gefřęm-ed,</b>	<i>to perform [frame].</i>
<b>nn:</b>	<b>đęnn-an,</b>	<b>đęn-ede,</b>	<b>geđęn-ed,</b>	<i>to extend.</i>
<b>ss:</b>	<b>cnys-an,</b>	<b>cnys-ede,</b>	<b>gecnys-ed,</b>	<i>to beat.</i>
<b>hb:</b>	<b>swębb-an,</b>	<b>swęf-ede,</b>	<b>geswęf-ed,</b>	<i>to put to sleep.</i>
<b>cg:</b>	<b>węcg-an,</b>	<b>węg-ede,</b>	<b>gewęg-ed,</b>	<i>to agitate.</i>

NOTE.—**Łęcgan**, *to lay*, is the only one of these verbs that syncopates the **e**: **łęcgan**, **łęgde** (**lęde**), **gełęgd** (**gelęd**), instead of **łęgede**, **gełęged**.

### Preterit and Past Participle in **-de** and **-ed**.

**126.** All the other verbs belonging to Class I. add **-de** for the preterit and **-ed** for the past participle. This division includes, therefore, all stems long by nature (§ 10, (3), (a)):

<b>dǣl-an,</b>	<b>dǣl-de,</b>	<b>gedǣl-ed,</b>	<i>to deal out, divide [dǣl].</i>
<b>dēm-an,</b>	<b>dēm-de,</b>	<b>gedēm-ed,</b>	<i>to judge [dōm].</i>
<b>grēt-an,</b>	<b>grēt-te,</b>	<b>gegrēt-ed,</b>	<i>to greet.</i>
<b>hīer-an,</b>	<b>hīer-de,</b>	<b>gehīer-ed,</b>	<i>to hear.</i>
<b>lǣd-an,</b>	<b>lǣd-de,</b>	<b>gelǣd-ed,</b>	<i>to lead.</i>

NOTE 1.—A preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note) changes **-de** into **-te**: **\*grēt-de** > **grēt-te**; **\*mēt-de** > **mēt-te**; **\*īec-de** > **īec-te**. Syncope and contraction are also frequent in the participles: **gegrēt-ed** > **\*gegrēt-d** > **gegrēt(t)**; **gelǣd-ed** > **gelǣd(d)**.

NOTE 2.—**Būan**, *to dwell, cultivate*, has an admixture of strong forms in the past participle: **būan**, **būde**, **gebūd** (**bŷn**, **gebūn**). The present participle survives in Mn.E. *husband* = *house-dweller*.

**127.** It includes, also, all stems long by position (§ 10, (3), (b)) except those in **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, and **cg** (§ 125):

<b>sęnd-an,</b>	<b>sęnd-e,</b>	<b>gesęnd-ed,</b>	<i>to send.</i>
<b>sętt-an,</b>	<b>sęt-te,</b>	<b>gesęt-ed,</b>	<i>to set [sittan].</i>
<b>sigl-an,</b>	<b>sigl-de,</b>	<b>gesigl-ed,</b>	<i>to sail.</i>
<b>spęnd-an,</b>	<b>spęnd-e,</b>	<b>gespęnd-ed,</b>	<i>to spend.</i>
<b>trędd-an,</b>	<b>tręd-de,</b>	<b>getręd-ed,</b>	<i>to tread.</i>

NOTE.—The participles frequently undergo syncope and contraction: **gesęnded** > **gesęnd**; **gesęted** > **gesęt(t)**; **gespęded** > **gespęnd**; **getręded** > **getręd(d)**.

### Irregular Verbs of Class I.

**128.** There are about twenty verbs belonging to Class I that are irregular in having no umlaut in the preterit and past participle. The preterit ends in **-de**, the past participle in **-d**; but, through the influence of a preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note), **-ed** is generally unvoiced to **-te**, and **-d** to **-t**. The most important of these verbs are as follows:

<b>bring-an,</b>	<b>brōh-te,</b>	<b>gebrōh-t,</b>	<i>to bring.</i>
<b>byc-gan,</b>	<b>boh-te,</b>	<b>geboh-t,</b>	<i>to buy.</i>
<b>sēc-an,</b>	<b>sōh-te,</b>	<b>gesōh-t,</b>	<i>to seek.</i>
<b>sęll-an,</b>	<b>seal-de,</b>	<b>geseal-d,</b>	<i>to give, sell [hand-sel].</i>
<b>tǣc-an,</b>	<b>tǣh-te,</b>	<b>getǣh-t,</b>	<i>to teach.</i>
<b>tęll-an,</b>	<b>teal-de,</b>	<b>geteal-d,</b>	<i>to count [tell].</i>
<b>đęnc-an,</b>	<b>đōh-te,</b>	<b>geđōh-t,</b>	<i>to think.</i>
<b>đync-an,</b>	<b>đūh-te,</b>	<b>geđūh-t,</b>	<i>to seem [methinks].</i>
<b>wyrc-an,</b>	<b>worh-te,</b>	<b>geworh-t,</b>	<i>to work.</i>

NOTE.—Such of these verbs as have stems in **c** or **g** are frequently written with an inserted **e**: **bycgean**, **sēccean**, **tǣcean**, etc. This **e** indicates that **c** and **g** have palatal value; that is, are to be followed with a vanishing **y**-sound. In such cases, O.E. **c** usually passes into Mn.E. *ch*: **tǣc(e)an** > *to teach*; **rǣcc(e)an** > *to reach*; **stręcc(e)an** > *to stretch*. **Sēc(e)an** gives *beseech* as well as *seek*. See § 8.

### Conjugation of Class I.

**129.** Paradigms of **nęrian**, *to save*; **fręmman**, *to perform*; **dǣlan**, *to divide*:

#### Indicative.

##### PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ic nęrie	fręmme	dǣle	
	2. đū nęrest	fręmest	dǣlst	
	3. hē nęređ	fręmeđ	dǣlđ	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. wē	} nęriađ	fręmmađ	
	2. gē			dǣlađ
	3. hīe			

##### PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ic nęrede	fręmede	dǣlde
	2. đū nęredest	fręmedest	dǣldest
	3. hē nęrede	fręmede	dǣlde
<i>Plur.</i>	1. wē		

2. gē	}	nēredon frēmedon dāeldon
3. hīe		

### Subjunctive.

#### PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	}	nērie frēmme dāele
2. ðū		
3. hē		
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	}	nērien frēmnen dāelen
2. gē		
3. hīe		

#### PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	}	nērede frēmede dāelde
2. ðū		
3. hē		
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	}	nēreden frēmeden dāelden
2. gē		
3. hīe		

### Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. nēre	frēme	dāel
<i>Plur.</i> 1. nērian	frēmman	dāelan
2. nēriað	frēmmað	dāelað

### Infinitive.

nērian	frēmman	dāelan
--------	---------	--------

### Gerund.

tō nērianne (-enne)	tō frēmmanne (-enne)	tō dāelanne (-enne)
---------------------	----------------------	---------------------

### Present Participle.

nēriende	frēmmente	dāelende
----------	-----------	----------

### Past Participle.

genēred	gefremed	gedæled
---------	----------	---------

NOTE.—The endings of the preterit present no difficulties; in the 2d and 3d singular present, however, the student will observe (a) that double consonants in the stem are made single: **frēmest, frēmeð** (not \***freēmest, \*freēmmeð**); **ðenest, ðeneð**; **setest (setst), seeteð (sett)**; **fylst, fylð**, from **fyllan**, *to fill*; (b) that syncope is the rule in stems long by nature: **dælst** (< **dælest**), **dælð** (< **dæleð**); **dēnst** (< **dēnest**), **dēmð** (< **dēmeð**); **hīerst** (< **hīerest**), **hīerð** (< **hīereð**). Double consonants are also made single in the imperative 2d singular and in the past participle. Stems long by nature take no final **-e** in the imperative: **dæl, hīer, dēm**.

87

## Class II.

**130.** The infinitive of verbs belonging to this class ends in **-ian** (not **-r-ian**), the preterit singular in **-ode**, the past participle in **-od**. The preterit plural usually has **-edon**, however, instead of **-odon**:

<b>eard-ian,</b>	<b>eard-ode,</b>	<b>geard-od,</b>	<i>to dwell</i> [eorðe].
<b>luf-ian,</b>	<b>luf-ode,</b>	<b>geluf-od,</b>	<i>to love</i> [lufu].
<b>rīcs-ian,</b>	<b>rīcs-ode,</b>	<b>gerīcs-od,</b>	<i>to rule</i> [rīce].
<b>sealf-ian,</b>	<b>sealf-ode,</b>	<b>gesealf-od,</b>	<i>to anoint</i> [salve].
<b>segl-ian,</b>	<b>segl-ode,</b>	<b>gesegl-od,</b>	<i>to sail</i> [segel].

NOTE.—These verbs have no trace of original umlaut, since their **-ian** was once **-ōjan**. Hence, the vowel of the stem was shielded from the influence of the **j** (= **i**) by the interposition of **ō**.

## Conjugation of Class II.

**131.** Paradigm of **lufian**, *to love*:

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	lufie	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} lufie
2. ðū	lufast	2. ðū	
3. hē	lufað	3. hē	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} lufiað	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} lufien
2. gē			
3. hīe			
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	lufode	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} lufode
2. ðū	lufodest	2. ðū	
3. hē	lufode	3. hē	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} lufedon (-odon)	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} lufeden (-oden)
2. gē			
3. hīe			
Imperative.	Infinitive.	Present Participle.	
<i>Sing.</i> 2. lufa	lufian	lufiende	

88



- Plur. 1. lufian  
2. lufiað

**Gerund.**            **Past Participle.**  
tō lufianne (-enne)      gelufod

NOTE 1.—The **-ie** (**-ien**) occurring in the present must be pronounced as a dissyllable. The **y**-sound thus interposed between the **i** and **e** is frequently indicated by the letter **g**: **lufie**, or **lufige**; **lufien**, or **lufigen**. So also for **ia**: **lufiað**, or **lufigað**; **lufian**, or **lufig(e)an**.

NOTE 2.—In the preterit singular, **-ade**, **-ude**, and **-ede** are not infrequent for **-ode**.

### Class III.

132. The few verbs belonging here show a blending of Classes I and II. Like certain verbs of Class I (§ 128), the preterit and past participle are formed by adding **-de** and **-d**; like Class II, the 2d and 3d present indicative singular end in **-ast** and **-að**, the imperative 2d singular in **-a**:

**habb-an**, **hæf-de**,            **gehæf-d**,            *to have.*  
**libb-an**, **lif-de**,            **gelif-d**,            *to live.*  
**sęcg-an**, **sęd-e** (**sęg-de**), **gesęd** (**gesęg-d**), *to say.*

### Conjugation of Class III.

89

133. Paradigms of **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; **sęcgan**, *to say*.

#### Indicative.

##### PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæbbe	libbe	sęcge	
2.	ðū hæfst (hafast)	lifast	sęgst (sagast)	
3.	hē hæfð (hafað)	lifað	sęgð (sagað)	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} habbað	libbað	sęcgað
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

##### PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæfde	lifde	sęde	
2.	ðū hæfdest	lifdest	sędest	
3.	hē hæfde	lifde	sęde	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} hæfdon	lifdon	sędon
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

#### Subjunctive.

##### PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} hæbbe	libbe	sęcge
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} hæbben	libben	sęcgen
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

##### PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} hæfde	lifde	sęde
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} hæfden	lifden	sęden
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

#### Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	hafa	lifa	saga
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	habban	libban	sęcgan
2.	habbað	libbað	sęcgað

#### Infinitive.

habban	libban	sęcgan
--------	--------	--------

#### Gerund.

tō habbanne (-enne)	tō libbanne (-enne)	tō sęcganne (-enne)
---------------------	---------------------	---------------------

#### Present Participle.

hæbbende	libbende	sęcgende
----------	----------	----------

#### Past Participle.

gehæfd	gelifd	gesęd
--------	--------	-------

90

## CHAPTER XXII.

REMAINING VERBS; VERB-PHRASES WITH **habban**, **bēon**, AND **weorðan**.

Anomalous Verbs. (See § 19.)

134. These are:

<b>bēon</b> (wesān),	<b>wæs</b> ,	<b>wæron</b> ,	---	<i>to be.</i>
<b>willan</b> ,	<b>wolde</b> ,	<b>woldon</b> ,	---	<i>to will, intend.</i>
<b>dōn</b> ,	<b>dyde</b> ,	<b>dydon</b> ,	<b>gedōn</b> ,	<i>to do, cause.</i>
<b>gān</b> ,	<b>ēode</b> ,	<b>ēodon</b> ,	<b>gegān</b> ,	<i>to go.</i>

NOTE.—In the original Indo-Germanic language, the first person of the present indicative singular ended in (1) **ō** or (2) **mi**. Cf. Gk. λύ-ω, εἰ-μί, Lat. *am-ō, su-m*. The Strong and Weak Conjugations of O.E. are survivals of the **ō**-class. The four Anomalous Verbs mentioned above are the sole remains in O.E. of the **mi**-class. Note the surviving **m** in **eom** *I am*, and **dōm** *I do* (Northumbrian form). These **mi**-verbs are sometimes called non-Thematic to distinguish them from the Thematic or **ō**-verbs.

91

### Conjugation of Anomalous Verbs.

135. Only the present indicative and subjunctive are at all irregular:

#### Indicative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic eom (bēom)	wille	dō	gā	
2.	ðū eart (bist)	wilt	dēst	gæst	
3.	hē is (bið)	wille	dēð	gæð	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} sind(on)	willað	dōð	gāð
2.	gē				
3.	hīe				

#### Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} sīe	wille	dō	gā
2.	ðū				
3.	hē				
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} sīen	willen	dōn	gān
2.	gē				
3.	hīe				

NOTE.—The preterit subjunctive of **bēon** is formed, of course, not from **wæs**, but from **wæron**. See § 103, (3).

### Preterit-Present Verbs. (See § 19.)

136. These verbs are called Preterit-Present because the present tense (indicative and subjunctive) of each of them is, in form, a strong preterit, the old present having been displaced by the new. They all have weak preterits. Most of the Mn.E. Auxiliary Verbs belong to this class.

<b>witan</b> ,	{ <b>wiste,</b> <b>wisse,</b> }	<b>wiston</b> ,	<b>gewiten</b> ,	<i>to know</i> [to wit, wot].
<b>āgan</b> ,	<b>āhte</b> ,	<b>āhton</b> ,	<b>āgen</b> (adj.),	<i>to possess</i> [owe].
<b>cunnan</b> ,	<b>cūðe</b> ,	<b>cūðon</b> ,	{ <b>gecunnen,</b> <b>cūð</b> (adj.), }	<i>to know, can</i> [uncouth, cunning].
<b>durran</b> ,	<b>dorste</b> ,	<b>dorston</b> ,	---	<i>to dare.</i>
<b>sculan</b> ,	<b>sceolde</b> ,	<b>sceoldon</b> ,	---	<i>shall.</i>
<b>magan</b> ,	{ <b>meahte,</b> <b>mihte,</b> }	{ <b>meah-ton,</b> <b>mihton,</b> }	---	<i>to be able, may.</i>
<b>mōtan</b> ,	<b>mōste</b> ,	<b>mōston</b> ,	---	<i>may, must.</i>

92

NOTE.—The change in meaning from preterit to present, with retention of the preterit form, is not uncommon in other languages. Several examples are found in Latin and Greek (cf. *nōvi* and *οἶδα*, *I know*). Mn.E. has gone further still: **āhte** and **mōste**, which had already suffered the loss of their old preterits (**āh**, **mōt**), have been forced back again into the present (*ought, must*). Having exhausted, therefore, the only means of preterit formation known to Germanic, the strong and the weak, it is not likely that either *ought* or *must* will ever develop distinct preterit forms.

### Conjugation of Preterit-Present Verbs.

137. The irregularities occur in the present indicative and subjunctive:

#### Indicative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic wāt	āh	cōn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt	
2.	ðū wāst	āhst	cōnst (canst)	dearst	scealt	meaht	mōst	
3.	hē wāt	āh	cōn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} witon	āgon	cunnon	durren	sculon	magon	mōton
2.	gē							
3.	hīe							

#### Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} wite	āge	cunne	durre	scule (scyle)	mæge	mōte
2.	ðū							
3.	hē							

Plur. 1. wē } witen āgen cunnen durren sculen (scylen) mægen mōten  
 2. gē }  
 3. hīe }

NOTE 1.—**Willan** and **sculan** do not often connote simple futurity in Early West Saxon, yet they were fast drifting that way. The Mn.E. use of *shall* only with the 1st person and *will* only with the 2d and 3d, to express simple futurity, was wholly unknown even in Shakespeare's day. The elaborate distinctions drawn between these words by modern grammarians are not only cumbersome and foreign to the genius of English, but equally lacking in psychological basis.

93

NOTE 2.—**Sculan** originally implied the idea of (1) *duty*, or *compulsion* (= *ought to*, or *must*), and this conception lurks with more or less prominence in almost every function of **sculan** in O.E.: **Dryhten bebēad Moyses hū hē sceolde beran ðā earce**, *The Lord instructed Moses how he ought to bear the ark*; **Ælc mann sceal be his andgietes mæðe ... sprecan ðæt he spricð, and ðon ðæt ðæt hē deð**, *Every man must, according to the measure of his intelligence, speak what he speaks, and do what he does*. Its next most frequent use is to express (2) *custom*, the transition from the obligatory to the customary being an easy one: **Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fiftýne mearðes fell**, *The man of highest rank pays fifteen marten skins*.

NOTE 3.—**Willan** expressed originally (1) *pure volition*, and this is its most frequent use in O.E. It may occur without the infinitive: **Nylle ic ðæs synfullan deað, ac ic wille ðæt hē gecyrrre and lybbe**, *I do not desire the sinner's death, but I desire that he return and live*. The wish being father to the intention, **willan** soon came to express (2) *purpose*: **Hē sæde ðæt hē at sumum cirre wolde fandian hū longe ðæt land norðryhte læge**, *He said that he intended, at some time, to investigate how far that land extended northward*.

### Verb-Phrases with **habban**, **bēon** (**wesan**), and **weorðan**.

#### *Verb-Phrases in the Active Voice.*

**138.** The present and preterit of **habban**, combined with a past participle, are used in O.E., as in Mn.E., to form the present perfect and past perfect tenses:

PRESENT PERFECT.		PAST PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæbbe gedrifen	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæfde gedrifen
2.	ðū hæfst gedrifen	2.	ðū hæfdest gedrifen
3.	hē hæfð gedrifen	3.	hē hæfde gedrifen
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } habbað gedrifen	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } hæfdon gedrifen
2.	gē }	2.	gē }
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }

94

The past participle is not usually inflected to agree with the direct object: **Norðymbre ond Ēastengle hæfdon Ælfrede cyninge āðas geseald** (not **gesealde**, § 82), *The Northumbrians and East Anglians had given king Alfred oaths*; **ond hæfdon micne dæl ðara horsa freten** (not **fretenne**), and *(they) had devoured a large part of the horses*.

NOTE.—Many sentences might be quoted in which the participle does agree with the direct object, but there seems to be no clear line of demarcation between them and the sentences just cited. Originally, the participle expressed a *resultant state*, and belonged in sense more to the object than to **habban**; but in Early West Saxon **habban** had already, in the majority of cases, become a pure auxiliary when used with the past participle. This is conclusively proved by the use of **habban** with intransitive verbs. In such a clause, therefore, as **oð ðæt hīe hine ofslægenne hæfdon**, there is no occasion to translate *until they had him slain* (= *resultant state*); the agreement here is more probably due to the proximity of **ofslægenne** to **hine**. So also **ac hī hæfdon þā hiera stemn gesetenne**, *but they had already served out (sat out) their military term*.

**139.** If the verb is intransitive, and denotes a *change of condition*, a *departure or arrival*, **bēon** (**wesan**) usually replaces **habban**. The past participle, in such cases, partakes of the nature of an adjective, and generally agrees with the subject: **Mine welan þe ic io hæfde syndon ealle gewitene ond gedrorene**, *My possessions which I once had are all departed and fallen away*; **wæron þā men uppe on londe of āgāne**, *the men had gone up ashore*; **ond þā oþre wæron hungre ācwolen**, and *the others had perished of hunger*; **ond ēac sē micla here wæs þā þær tō cumen**, and *also the large army had then arrived there*.

95

**140.** A progressive present and preterit (not always, however, with distinctively progressive meanings) are formed by combining a present participle with the present and preterit of **bēon** (**wesan**). The participle remains uninflected: **ond hīe alle on ðone cyning wærun feohtende**, and *they all were fighting against the king*; **Symle hē bið lōciende, nē slæpð hē næfre**, *He is always looking, nor does He ever sleep*.

NOTE.—In most sentences of this sort, the subject is masculine (singular or plural); hence no inference can be made as to agreement, since **-e** is the participial ending for both numbers of the nominative masculine (§ 82). By analogy, therefore, the other genders usually conform in inflection to the masculine: **wæron þā ealle þā deoflu clypigende ānre stefne**, *then were all the devils crying with one voice*.

#### *Verb-Phrases in the Passive Voice.*

**141.** Passive constructions are formed by combining **bēon** (**wesan**) or **weorðan** with a past

participle. The participle agrees regularly with the subject: **hīe wæron benumene ægðer ge þæs cēapes ge þæs cornes**, *they were deprived both of the cattle and the corn*; **hī bēoð āblēnde mid ðæm þiostrum heora scylda**, *they are blinded with the darkness of their sins*; and **sē wælrēowa Domiciānus on ðām ylcan gēare wearð ācweald**, *and the murderous Domitian was killed in the same year*; **oꝛd Æpelwulf aldormoꝛn wearð ofslægen**, *and Æthelwulf, alderman, was slain*.

NOTE 1.—To express agency, Mn.E. employs *by*, rarely *of*; M.E. *of*, rarely *by*; O.E. **frōm (fram)**, rarely **of**: **Sē ðe Godes bebodu ne gecnāwō, ne bið hē oncnāwen frōm Gode**, *He who does not recognise God's commands, will not be recognized by God*; **Betwux þæm wearð ofslagen Æadwine ... fram Brytta cyninge**, *Meanwhile, Edwin was slain by the king of the Britons*.

NOTE 2.—O.E. had no progressive forms for the passive, and could not, therefore, distinguish between *He is being wounded* and *He is wounded*. It was not until more than a hundred years after Shakespeare's death that *being* assumed this function. **Weorðan**, which originally denoted a *passage from one state to another*, was ultimately driven out by **bēon (wesan)**, and survives now only in *Woe worth (= be to)*.

142.

VOCABULARY.

**ðā Beormas**, *Permians*.

**ðā Deņiscan**, *the Danish (men), Danes*.

**ðā Finnas**, *Fins*.

**ðæt gewald**, *control [wealdan]*.

**sēo sǣ**, *sea*.

**sēo scīr**, *shire, district*.

**sēo wælstōw**, *battle-field*.

**āgan wælstōwe gewald**, *to maintain possession of the battle-field*.

**sē wealdend**, *ruler, wielder*.

**geflieman**, **gefliemde**, **gefliemed**, *to put to flight*.

**gestaðelian**, **gestaðelode**, **gestaðelod**, *to establish, restore*.

**gewissian**, **gewissode**, **gewissod**, *to guide, direct*.

**wīcian**, **wīcode**, **gewīcod**, *to dwell [wīc = village]*.

143.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Oꝛd ðær wæs micel wæl geslægen on gehwæpre hoꝛd, oꝛd Æpelwulf ealdormoꝛn wearþ ofslægen; oꝛd þā Deņiscan āhton wælstōwe gewald. 2. Oꝛd þæs ymb āne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning wiþ ealne þone here ond hine gefliemde. 3. Hē sǣde þeah þæt þæt land sīe swīpe lang norþ þonan. 4. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīpe wel gebūð (§ 126, Note 2) hiera land. 5. Ohthere sǣde þæt sēo scīr hǣtte (§ 117, Note 2) Hālgoland, þe hē on (§ 94, (5)) būde. 6. Þā Finnas wicedon be þære sǣ. 7. Dryhten, ælmihtiga (§ 78, Note) God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse ðæt ðū mē gewissie tō ðīnum willan; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe. 8. Þā sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðæm þæt land bēag þær sūdryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē nysse hwæðer. 9. For ðy, mē ðyncð betre, gif ēow swā ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac ðās bēc on ðæt geðeode wēnden ðe wē ealle gecnāwan mægen.

II. 1. When the king heard that, he went (= then went he) westward with his army to Ashdown. 2. Lovest thou me more than these? 3. The men said that the shire which they lived in was called Halgoland. 4. All things were made (**wyrca**n) by God. 5. They were fighting for two days with (= against) the Danes. 6. King Alfred fought with the Danes, and gained the victory; but the Danes retained possession of the battle-field. 7. These men dwelt in England before they came hither. 8. I have not seen the book of (**ymbe**) which you speak (**spreca**n).

## PART III.



### SELECTIONS FOR READING.



#### PROSE.

##### INTRODUCTORY.

#### I. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

THIS famous work, a series of progressive annals by unknown hands, embraces a period extending from Cæsar's invasion of England to 1154. It is not known when or where these annals began to be recorded in English.

“The annals from the year 866—that of Ethelred’s ascent of the throne—to the year 887 seem to be the work of one mind. Not a single year is passed over, and to several is granted considerable space, especially to the years 871, 878, and 885. The whole has gained a certain roundness and fulness, because the events—nearly all of them episodes in the ever-recurring conflict with the Danes—are taken in their connection, and the thread dropped in one year is resumed in the next. Not only is the style in itself concise; it has a sort of nervous severity and pithy rigor. The construction is often antiquated, and suggests at times the freedom of poetry; though this purely historical prose is far removed from poetry in profusion of language.” (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.)

## II. The Translations of Alfred.

Alfred’s reign (871-901) may be divided into four periods. The *first*, the period of Danish invasion, extends from 871 to 881; the *second*, the period of comparative quiet, from 881 to 893; the *third*, the period of renewed strife (beginning with the incursions of Hasting), from 893 to 897; the *fourth*, the period of peace, from 897 to 901. His literary work probably falls in the second period.\*

The works translated by Alfred from Latin into the vernacular were (1) *Consolation of Philosophy* (*De Consolatione Philosophiae*) by Boëthius (475-525), (2) *Compendious History of the World* (*Historiarum Libri VII*) by Orosius (c. 418), (3) *Ecclesiastical History of the English* (*Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*) by Bede (672-735), and (4) *Pastoral Care* (*De Cura Pastoralis*) by Pope Gregory the Great (540-604).

The chronological sequence of these works is wholly unknown. That given is supported by Turner, Arend, Morley, Grein, and Pauli. Wülker argues for an exact reversal of this order. According to Ten Brink, the order was more probably (1) *Orosius*, (2) *Bede*, (3) *Boëthius*, and (4) *Pastoral Care*. The most recent contribution to the subject is from Wülfing, who contends for (1) *Bede*, (2) *Orosius*, (3) *Pastoral Care*, and (4) *Boëthius*.

\* There is something inexpressibly touching in this clause from the great king’s pen: gif wē ðā stilnesse habbað. He is speaking of how much he hopes to do, by his translations, for the enlightenment of his people.

## I. THE BATTLE OF ASHDOWN.

[From the *Chronicle*, Parker MS. The event and date are significant. The Danes had for the first time invaded Wessex. Alfred’s older brother, Ethelred, was king; but to Alfred belongs the glory of the victory at Ashdown (Berkshire). Asser (*Life of Alfred*) tells us that for a long time Ethelred remained praying in his tent, while Alfred and his followers went forth “like a wild boar against the hounds.”]

1 871. Hēr cuōm <sup>1</sup> sē hēre tō Rēadingum on Westseaxe,  
2 ƿnd þæs ymb iii niht ridon ii eorlas ūp. Þa gemette hīe  
1 Æþelwulf aldorman <sup>2</sup> on Eᅅglafelda, ƿnd him þær wiþ gefeaht,  
2 ƿnd sige nam. Þæs ymb iiii niht Æþered cyning  
3 ƿnd Ælfred his brōþur <sup>3</sup> þær micle fierd tō Rēadingum  
4 gelæddon, ƿnd wiþ þone hēre gefuhton; ƿnd þær wæs  
5 micel wæl geslægen on gehwæpre hƿnd, ƿnd Æþelwulf  
6 aldormƿn wearþ ofslægen; ƿnd þa Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe  
7 gewald.  
8 ƿnd þæs ymb iiii niht gefeaht Æþered cyning ƿnd  
9 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ alne <sup>4</sup> þone hēre on Æscesdūne.  
10 ƿnd hīe wærun <sup>5</sup> on twæm gefylcum: on oþrum wæs  
11 Bāchsecg ƿnd Halfdene þa hæþnan cyningas, ƿnd on  
12 oþrum wæron þa eorlas. ƿnd þa gefeaht sē cyning  
13 Æþered wiþ þara cyninga getruman, ƿnd þær wearþ sē  
14 cyning Bāgsecg ofslægen; ƿnd Ælfred his brōþur wiþ  
15 þara eorla getruman, ƿnd þær wearþ Sidroc eorl ofslægen  
16 sē alda, <sup>6</sup> ƿnd Sidroc eorl sē gioncga, <sup>7</sup> ƿnd Ōsbearn eorl,  
17 ƿnd Fræna eorl, ƿnd Hareld eorl; ƿnd þa hērgas <sup>8</sup> bēgen  
18 gefliemde, ƿnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra, ƿnd onfeotende  
19 wæron oþ niht.  
20 ƿnd þæs ymb xiiii niht gefeaht Æþered cyning ƿnd  
21 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ þone hēre æt Basengum, ƿnd þær  
22 þa Dēniscan sige nāmon.  
23 ƿnd þæs ymb ii mōnaþ gefeaht Æþered cyning ƿnd  
24 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ þone hēre æt Mēretūne, ƿnd hīe  
25 wærun on tuæm <sup>9</sup> gefylcium, ƿnd hīe bütū gefliemdon, ƿnd  
26 lƿnge on dæg sige āhton; ƿnd þær wearþ micel wælsliht  
27 on gehwæpere hƿnd; ƿnd þa Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe

- 1 gewald; ƿnd þær wearþ Hēahmund bisceop ofslægen,  
 2 ƿnd fela gōdra mōnna. ƿnd æfter þissum gefeohte cuōm <sup>1</sup>  
 3 micel sumorlida.
- 4 ƿnd þæs ofer Ēastron gefōr Æþered cyning; ƿnd hē  
 5 rīcsode v gēar; ƿnd his līc līþ æt Wīnburnan.
- 6 Þā fēng Ælfred Æþelwulfing his brōþur tō Wesseaxna  
 7 rīce. ƿnd þæs ymb ānne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning  
 8 wiþ alne <sup>4</sup> þone hēre lýtle werede <sup>10</sup> æt Wiltūne, ƿnd hine  
 9 lōnge on dæg gefliemde, ƿnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe  
 10 gewald.
- 11 ƿnd þæs gēares wurdon viiii folcgefeoht gefohten wiþ  
 12 þone hēre on þý cynerīce be sūþan Tēmese, būtan þām þe  
 13 him Ælfred þæs cyninges brōþur ƿnd ānlīpig aldormōn <sup>2</sup> ƿnd  
 14 cyninges þegnas oft rāde onridon þe mōn nā ne rīmde;  
 15 ƿnd þæs gēares wærun <sup>5</sup> ofslægene viiii eorlas ƿnd ān cyning.  
 16 ƿnd þý gēare nāmon Westseaxe friþ wiþ þone hēre.

**100.8. gefeaht.** Notice that the singular is used. This is the more common construction in O.E. when a compound subject, composed of singular members, follows its predicate. Cf. *For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory.* See also p. 107, note on **wæs**.

**100.18. ƿnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra,** and there were many thousands of slain (§ 91).

**101.12. būtan þām þe,** etc., besides which, Alfred ... made raids against them (**him**), which were not counted. See § 70, Note.

CONSULT GLOSSARY AND PARADIGMS UNDER FORMS GIVEN BELOW.

No note is made of such variants as **y** (ȳ) or **i** (ī) for **ie** (īe). See Glossary under **ie** (īe); occurrences, also, of **and** for **ƿnd**, **land** for **lōnd**, are found on almost every page of Early West Saxon. Such words should be sought for under the more common forms, **ƿnd**, **lōnd**.

- 1 = cwōm.  
 2 = ealdormōn.  
 3 = brōþor.  
 4 = ealne.  
 5 = wæron.  
 6 = ealda.  
 7 = geonga.  
 8 = hēras.  
 9 = twæm.  
 10 = werode.

## II. A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

[With this characteristic prayer, Alfred concludes his translation of Boëthius's *Consolation of Philosophy*. Unfortunately, the only extant MS. (Bodleian 180) is Late West Saxon. I follow, therefore, Prof. A. S. Cook's normalization on an Early West Saxon basis. See Cook's *First Book in Old English*, p. 163.]

- 1 Dryhten, ælmihtiga God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra  
 2 gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse,  
 3 and for ðære hālgan rōde tæcne, and for Sanctæ Marian  
 4 mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaeles gehiersumnesse, and  
 5 for ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan and hīera earnungum, ðæt  
 6 ðū mē gewissie bēt ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa  
 7 mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe, bēt ðonne  
 8 ic self cunne; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and  
 9 tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wið ðæs deofles  
 10 costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and  
 11 ælce unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wið mīnum wiðerwinnum,  
 12 gesewenlicum and ungesewenlicum; and tæc mē  
 13 ðīnne willan tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge ðē inweardlice  
 14 lufian tōforan eallum ðingum, mid clænum geðance and  
 15 mid clænum lichaman. For ðon ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend,  
 16 and mīn Aliesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēownes,  
 17 and mīn Tōhopa. Sie ðē lof and wuldor nū and  
 18 ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ęnde. Amen.

**102.3-4. Marian ... Michaeles.** O.E. is inconsistent in the treatment of foreign names. They are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes retain in part their original inflections. **Marian**, an original accusative, is here used as a genitive; while **Michaeles** has the

### III. THE VOYAGES OF OHTHERE AND WULFSTAN.

[Lauderdale and Cottonian MSS. These voyages are an original insertion by Alfred into his translation of Orosius's *Compendious History of the World*.

"They consist," says Ten Brink, "of a complete description of all the countries in which the Teutonic tongue prevailed at Alfred's time, and a full narrative of the travels of two voyagers, which the king wrote down from their own lips. One of these, a Norwegian named Ohthere, had quite circumnavigated the coast of Scandinavia in his travels, and had even penetrated to the White Sea; the other, named Wulfstan, had sailed from Schleswig to Frische Haff. The geographical and ethnographical details of both accounts are exceedingly interesting, and their style is attractive, clear, and concrete."

103

Ohthere made two voyages. Sailing first northward along the western coast of Norway, he rounded the North Cape, passed into the White Sea, and entered the Dwina River (**ān micel ēa**). On his second voyage he sailed southward along the western coast of Norway, entered the Skager Rack (**widsæ**), passed through the Cattegat, and anchored at the Danish port of Haddeby (**æt Hæþum**), modern Schleswig.

Wulfstan sailed only in the Baltic Sea. His voyage of seven days from Schleswig brought him to Drausen (**Trūsō**) on the shore of the Drausensea.]

#### Ohthere's First Voyage.

1    Òthere sǣde his hlāforde, Ælfrēde cyninge, þæt hē  
2    ealra Norðmōna norþmest būde. Hē cwæð þæt hē būde  
3    on þæm lande norþweardum wiþ þā Westsæ. Hē sǣde  
4    þēah þæt þæt land sīe swīþe lang norþ þonan; ac hit is  
5    eal wēste, būton on fēawum stōwum stycemælum wīcīað  
6    Finnas, on huntoðe on wintra, qnd on sumera on fīscāþe  
7    be þære sǣ. Hē sǣde þæt hē æt sumum cirre wolde  
8    fandian hū lōnge þæt land norþryhte lǣge, oþþe hwæðer  
9    ænig mōn be norðan þæm wēstene būde. Þā fōr hē  
10    norþryhte be þæm lande: lēt him ealne weg þæt wēste  
11    land on ðæt stēorbord, qnd þā wīdsæ on ðæt bæcbord þrīe  
12    dagas. Þā wæs hē swā feor norþ swā þā hwælhuntan  
13    firrest faraþ. Þā fōr hē þā gīet norþryhte swā feor swā  
14    hē meahte on þæm oþrum þrīm dagum gesiglan. Þā bēag  
15    þæt land þær ēastryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt lōnd, hē  
16    nysse hwæðer, būton hē wisse ðæt hē ðær bād westanwindes  
17    qnd hwōn norþan, qnd siglde ðā east be lande  
18    swā swā hē meahte on fēower dagum gesiglan. Þā  
19    sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðæm þæt  
20    land bēag þær sūþryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē  
21    nysse hwæþer. Þā siglde hē þonan sūðryhte be lande

104

1    swā swā hē mehte <sup>1</sup> on fīf dagum gesiglan. Ðā læg þær  
2    ān micel ēa ūp in on þæt land. Þā cirdon hīe ūp in on  
3    ðā ēa, for þæm hīe ne dorston forþ bi þære ēa siglan for  
4    unfriþe; for þæm ðæt land wæs eall gebūn on oþre healfe  
5    þære ēas. Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, siþþan hē  
6    frōm his āgnum hām fōr; ac him wæs ealne weg wēste  
7    land on þæt stēorbord, būtan fīscerum qnd fugelerum ōnd  
8    huntum, qnd þæt wæron eall Finnas; qnd him wæs ā  
9    wīdsæ on ðæt bæcbord. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīþe wel  
10    gebūd hira land: ac hīe ne dorston þær on cuman. Ac  
11    þāra Terfinna land wæs eal wēste, būton ðær huntan  
12    gewīcodon, oþþe fīsceras, oþþe fugeleras.

13    Fela spella him sǣdon þā Beormas ægþer ge of hīera  
14    āgnum lande ge of þæm landum þe ymb hīe ūtan wæron;  
15    ac hē nyste hwæt þæs sōþes wæs, for þæm hē hit self ne  
16    geseah. Þā Finnas, him þūhte, qnd þā Beormas spræcon  
17    nēah ān gepēode. Swīþost hē fōr ðider, tō ēacan þæs  
18    landes scēawunge, for þæm horshwælum, for ðæm hīe  
19    habbað swīþe æþele bān on hīora <sup>2</sup> tōþum—þā tēð hīe brōhton  
20    sume þæm cyninge—qnd hīora hīd bið swīðe gōd tō  
21    scīprāpum. Sē hwæl bið mīcle lǣssa þonne ōðre hwalas:  
22    ne bið hē lēngra ðonne syfan <sup>3</sup> ęlna lang; ac on his āgnum  
23    lande is sē bētsta hwælhuntað: þā bēoð eahta and fēowertiges

24 ęlna lange, and þā mæstan fiftiges ęlna lange;  
25 þāra hē sǣde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig on twām  
26 dagum.

1 Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on þǣm æhtum þe heora <sup>2</sup>  
2 spēda on bēoð, þæt is, on wildrum. Hē hæfde þā gýt, ðā  
3 hē þone cyningc <sup>5</sup> sōhte, tamra dēora unbebohtra syx hund.  
4 Þā dēor hī hātað 'hrānas'; þāra wǣron syx stælhānas;  
5 ðā bēoð swyðe dýre mid Finnum, for ðǣm hý fōð þā  
6 wildan hrānas mid. Hē wæs mid þǣm fyrstum mannum  
7 on þǣm lande: næfde hē þeah mā ðonne twēntig hrýðera,  
8 and twēntig scēapa, and twēntig swýna; and þæt lýtle  
9 þæt hē ęrede, hē ęrede mid horsan. <sup>4</sup> Ac hyra ār is mæst  
10 on þǣm gafole þe ðā Finnas him gylðað. Þæt gafol bið  
11 on dēora fellum, and on fugela feðerum, and hwales bāne,  
12 and on þǣm sciprāpum þe bēoð of hwæles hýde geworht  
13 and of sēoles. Æghwīlc gylt be hys gebyrdum. Sē byrdesta  
14 sceall gylðan fiftýne mearðes fell, and fif hrānes,  
15 and ān beren fel, and týn ambra feðra, and berenne kyrtel  
16 oððe yterenne, and twēgen sciprāpas; ægþer sý syxtig  
17 ęlna lang, oþer sý of hwæles hýde geworht, oþer of sīoles. <sup>6</sup>

18 Hē sǣde ðæt Norðmanna land wǣre swýþe lang and  
19 swyðe smæl. Eal þæt his man āðer oððe ęttan oððe ęrian  
20 mæg, þæt līð wið ðā sǣ; and þæt is þeah on sumum  
21 stōwum swyðe clúdig; and licgað wilde mōras wið ēastan  
22 and wið ūpp on emnlange þǣm býnum lande. On þǣm  
23 mōrum eardiað Finnas. And þæt býne land is ēasteward  
24 brādost, and symle swā norðor swā smælre. Ēastewerð <sup>7</sup>  
25 hit mæg bion <sup>8</sup> syxtig mīla brād, oþþe hwēne brædre;  
26 and middeward þritig oððe brædre; and norðeward hē  
27 cwæð, þær hit smalost wǣre, þæt hit mihte bēon þrēora  
28 mīla brād tō þǣm mōre; and sē mōr syðþan, <sup>9</sup> on sumum  
1 stōwum, swā brād swā man mæg on twām wucum oferfēran;  
2 and on sumum stōwum swā brād swā man mæg  
3 on syx dagum oferfēran.

4 ðonne is tōemnes þǣm lande sūðewardum, on oðre  
5 healf þæs mōres, Swēoland, oþ þæt land norðeward;  
6 and tōemnes þǣm lande norðewardum, Cwēna land. Þā  
7 Cwēnas hęrgiað hwīlum on ðā Norðmęn ofer ðone mōr,  
8 hwīlum þā Norðmęn on hý. And þær sint swīðe micle  
9 męras fersce geond þā mōras; and berað þā Cwēnas hyra  
10 scypu ofer land on ðā męras, and þanon hęrgiað on ðā  
11 Norðmęn; hý habbað swyðe lýtle scypa and swyðe  
12 leohte.

104.6. **from his āgnum hām.** An adverbial dative singular without an inflectional ending is found with **hām**, **dæg**, **morgen**, and **ǣfen**.

104.8. **ond þæt wǣron.** See § 40, Note 3.

104.15. **hwæt þæs sōþes wæs.** Sweet errs in explaining **sōþes** as attracted into the genitive by **þæs**. It is not a predicate adjective, but a partitive genitive after **hwæt**.

104.25. **syxa sum.** See § 91, Note 2.

105.2. **on bēoð.** See § 94, (5).

105.19. **Eal þæt his man.** Pronominal genitives are not always possessive in O.E.; **his** is here the partitive genitive of **hit**, the succeeding relative pronoun being omitted: *All that (portion) of it that may, either-of-the-two, either be grazed or plowed, etc.* (§ 70, Note).

106.11-12. **scypa ... leohte.** These words exhibit inflections more frequent in Late than in Early West Saxon. The normal forms would be **scypu**, **leoht**; but in Late West Saxon the **-u** of short-stemmed neuters is generally replaced by **-a**; and the nominative accusative plural neuter of adjectives takes, by analogy, the masculine endings; **hwate**, **gōde**, **hālge**, instead of **hwatu**, **gōd**, **hālgu**.

1 = meahte, mihte.

2 = hiera.

3 = seofon.

4 = horsum.

5 = cyning.

6 = sēoles.

7 = -ward.



8 = bēon.  
9 = siððan.

### Ohthere's Second Voyage.

13 Ōhthere sǣde þæt sīo <sup>1</sup> scīr hātte Hālgoland, þe hē on  
14 būde. Hē cwæð þæt nān man ne būde be norðan him.  
15 Þonne is ān port on sūðewardum þæm lande, þone man  
16 hæt Sciringeshēal. Þyder hē cwæð þæt man ne mihte  
17 geseġlian on ānum mōnðe, ġyf man on niht wīcode, and  
18 ælce dæge hæfde ambyrne wind; and ealle ðā hwīle hē  
19 sceal seġlian be lande. And on þæt stēorbord him bið  
20 ærest Íraland, and þonne ðā ġland þe synd betux Íralande  
21 and þissum lande. Þonne is þis land, oð hē cymð  
22 tō Sciringeshēale, and ealne weg on þæt bæcbord Norðweg.  
1 Wið sūðan þone Sciringeshēal fylð swýðe mycel  
2 sǣ ūp in on ðæt land; sēo is brādre þonne ænig man ofer  
3 sēon mæge. And is Gotland on oðre healfe ongēan, and  
4 siððan Sillēnde. Sēo sǣ lið mænig <sup>2</sup> hund mīla ūp in on  
5 þæt land.  
6 And of Sciringeshēale hē cwæð ðæt hē seġlode on fif  
7 dagan <sup>3</sup> tō þæm porte þe mōn hæt æt Hǣþum; sē stent  
8 betuh Winedum, and Seaxum, and Angle, and hýrð in  
9 on Dene. ðā hē þiderweard seġlode fram Sciringeshēale,  
10 þā wæs him on þæt bæcbord Denamearc and on  
11 þæt stēorbord wīdsǣ þrý dagas; and þā, twēgen dagas ær  
12 hē tō Hǣþum cōme, him wæs on þæt stēorbord Gotland,  
13 and Sillēnde, and ġlanda fela. On þæm landum eardodon  
14 Eñgle, ær hī hider on land cōman. <sup>4</sup> And hym wæs  
15 ðā twēgen dagas on ðæt bæcbord þā ġland þe in on  
16 Denamearce hýrað.

107

**107.7. æt Hǣþum.** "This pleonastic use of *æt* with names of places occurs elsewhere in the older writings, as in the Chronicle (552), 'in þære stōwe þe is genemned æt Searobyrg,' where the *æt* has been erased by some later hand, showing that the idiom had become obsolete. Cp. the German 'Gasthaus zur Krone,' Stamboul = *es tǣn pōlin*." (Sweet.) See, also, *Atterbury*, § 28, Note 3.

**107.14-15. wæs ... þā ġland.** The singular predicate is due again to inversion (p. 100, note on **gefeah**). The construction is comparatively rare in O.E., but frequent in Shakespeare and in the popular speech of to-day. Cf. *There is, Here is, There has been*, etc., with a (single) plural subject following.

1 = sēo.  
2 = mōnig.  
3 = dagum.  
4 = cōmen.

### Wulfstan's Voyage.

17 Wulfstān sǣde þæt hē gefōre of Hǣðum, þæt hē wære  
18 on Trūsō on syfan dagum and nihtum, þæt þæt scip wæs  
19 ealne weg yrnende under seġle. Weonoðland him wæs  
1 on stēorbord, and on bæcbord him wæs Langaland, and  
2 Lǣland, and Falster, and Scōnēġ; and þās land eall  
3 hýrað tō Denamearcan. And þonne Burgenda land wæs  
4 ūs on bæcbord, and þā habbað him sylfe <sup>1</sup> cyning. Þonne  
5 æfter Burgenda lande wæron ūs þās land, þā synd hātene  
6 ærest Blēcinga-ēġ, and Mēore, and Eowland, and Gotland  
7 on bæcbord; and þās land hýrað tō Swēom. And Weonodland  
8 wæs ūs ealne weg on stēorbord oð Wislemūðan.  
9 Sēo Wisle is swýðe mycel ēa, and hīo <sup>2</sup> tōlið Witland and  
10 Weonodland; and þæt Witland belimpeð tō Estum; and  
11 sēo Wisle lið ūt of Weonodlande, and lið in Estmēre;  
12 and sē Estmēre is hūru fiftēne <sup>3</sup> mīla brād. Þonne cymeð  
13 Ilfing ēastan in Estmēre of ðām mēre, ðe Trūsō stondeð  
14 in stæðe; and cumað ūt samod in Estmēre, Ilfing ēastan  
15 of Estlande, and Wisle sūðan of Winodlande. And  
16 þonne benimð Wisle Ilfing hire naman, and ligeð of þæm  
17 mēre west and norð on sǣ; for ðý hit man hæt  
18 Wislemūða.

108

19 Pæt Estland is swýðe mycel, and þær bið swýðe manig  
 20 burh, and on ælcere byrig bið cyning. And þær bið  
 21 swýðe mycel hunig, and fiscnað; and sē cyning and þā  
 22 rīcostan mēn drincað mýran meolc, and þā unspēdigan  
 23 and þā þēowan drincað medo. <sup>4</sup> Þær bið swýðe mycel  
 24 gewinn betwēonan him. And ne bið ðær nænig ealo <sup>5</sup>  
 25 gebrowen mid Estum, ac þær bið medo genōh. And þær  
 26 is mid Estum ðēaw, þonne þær bið man dēad, þæt hē lið  
 27 inne unforbærned mid his mægum and frēondum mōnað,  
 28 ge hwilum twēgen; and þā cyningas, and þā oðre hēahðungene  
 29 mēn, swā micle lęncg <sup>6</sup> swā hī māran spēda  
 30 habbað, hwilum healf gēar þæt hī bēoð unforbærned, and  
 1 licgað bufan eorðan on hyra hūsum. And ealle þā hwile  
 2 þe þæt lic bið inne, þær sceal bēon gedrync and plega,  
 3 oð ðone dæg þe hī hine forbærnað. Þonne þý ylcan dæge  
 4 þe hī hine tō þæm āde beran wyllað, þonne tōdælað hī  
 5 his feoh, þæt þær tō lāfe bið æfter þæm gedrynce and þæm  
 6 plegan, on fif oððe syx, hwylum on mā, swā swā þæs fēos  
 7 andēfn bið. Ālęcgað hit ðonne forhwæga on ānre mīle  
 8 þone mæstan dæl fram þæm tūne, þonne oðerne, ðonne  
 9 þone þridan, oþ þe hyt eall ālēd bið on þære ānre mīle;  
 10 and sceall bēon sē læsta dæl nýhst þæm tūne ðe sē dēada  
 11 man on lið. Þonne sceolon <sup>7</sup> bēon gesamnode ealle ðā  
 12 mēnn ðe swyftoste hors habbað on þæm lande, forhwæga  
 13 on fif mīlum oððe on syx mīlum fram þæm fēo. Þonne  
 14 ærnað hý ealle tōweard þæm fēo: ðonne cymeð sē man  
 15 sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað tō þæm ærestan dæle and tō  
 16 þæm mæstan, and swā ælc æfter oðrum, oþ hit bið eall  
 17 genumen; and sē nimð þone læstan dæl sē nýhst þæm  
 18 tūne þæt feoh geærneð. And þonne rīdeð ælc hys weges  
 19 mid ðæm fēo, and hyt mōtan <sup>8</sup> habban eall; and for ðý  
 20 þær bēoð þā swiftan hors ungefōge dýre. And þonne his  
 21 gestrēon bēoð þus eall āspēnded, þonne byrð man hine ūt,  
 22 and forbærneð mid his wæpnum and hrægle; and swīðost  
 1 ealle hys spēda hý forspēndað mid þæm langan legere  
 2 þæs dēadan mannes inne, and þæs þe hý be þæm wegum  
 3 ālęcgað, þe ðā fręmdan tō ærnað, and nimað. And þæt  
 4 is mid Estum þēaw þæt þær sceal ælcas geðēodes man  
 5 bēon forbærned; and gyf þār <sup>9</sup> man ān bān findeð unforbærned,  
 6 hī hit sceolan <sup>7</sup> miclum gebētan. And þær is mid  
 7 Estum ān mægð þæt hī magon cyle gewyrca; and þý  
 8 þær licgað þā dēadan mēn swā lange, and ne fūliað, þæt  
 9 hý wyrcað þone cyle him on. And þeah man āsette  
 10 twēgen fætels full ealað oððe wæteres, hý gedōð þæt  
 11 ægþer bið oferfrozen, sam hit sý sumor sam winter.

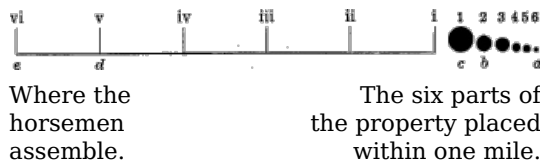
109

110

108.1-4. **him ... ūs.** Note the characteristic change of person, the transition from *indirect* to *direct discourse*.

109.2. **sceal.** See § 137, Note 2 (2).

109.7. **Ālęcgað hit.** Bosworth illustrates thus:



“The horsemen assemble five or six miles from the property, at *d* or *e*, and run towards *c*; the man who has the swiftest horse, coming first to 1 or *c*, takes the first and largest part. The man who has the horse coming second takes part 2 or *b*, and so, in succession, till the least part, 6 or *a*, is taken.”

Text version of illustration

110.5-6. **man ... hī.** Here the plural **hī** refers to the singular **man**. Cf. p. 109, ll. 18-19, **ælc ... mōtan**. In *Exodus* xxxii, 24, we find “*Whosoever* hath any gold, let *them* break it off”; and Addison writes, “I do not mean that I think *anyone* to blame for taking due care of *their* health.” The construction, though outlawed now, has been common in all periods of our language. Paul remarks (*Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte*, 3d ed., § 186) that “When a word is used as an indefinite [one, man, somebody, etc.] it is, strictly speaking, incapable of any distinction of number. Since, however, in respect of the

external form, a particular number has to be chosen, it is a matter of indifference which this is.... Hence a change of numbers is common in the different languages." Paul fails to observe that the change is always from singular to plural, not from plural to singular. See *Note on the Concord of Collectives and Indefinites* (Anglia XI, 1901). See p. 119, note on ll. 19-21.

- 1 = selfe.
- 2 = hēo.
- 3 = fiftiene.
- 4 = medu.
- 5 = ealu.
- 6 = leng.
- 7 = sculon.
- 8 = mōton.
- 9 = ðær.

111

#### IV. THE STORY OF CÆDMON.

[From the so-called Alfredian version of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*. The text generally followed is that of MS. Bodley, Tanner 10. Miller (*Early English Text Society*, No. 95, *Introd.*) argues, chiefly from the use of the prepositions, that the original O.E. MS. was Mercian, composed possibly in Lichfield (Staffordshire). At any rate, O.E. idiom is frequently sacrificed to the Latin original.

"Cædmon, as he is called, is the first Englishman whose name we know who wrote poetry in our island of England; and the first to embody in verse the new passions and ideas which Christianity had brought into England.... Undisturbed by any previous making of lighter poetry, he came fresh to the work of Christianising English song. It was a great step to make. He built the chariot in which all the new religious emotions of England could now drive along." (Brooke, *The History of Early English Literature*, cap. XV.) There is no reason to doubt the historical existence of Cædmon; for Bede, who relates the story, lived near Whitby, and was seven years old when Cædmon died (A.D. 680)].

1 In ðysse abbudissan mynstre wæs sum brōðor syndriglice  
 2 mid godcundre gife gemæred ond geweorðad, for þon  
 3 he gewunade gerisenlice lēoð wyrcan, þā ðe tō æfēstnisse 1  
 4 ond tō ārfæstnisse belumpon; swā ðætte swā hwæt swā  
 5 hē of godcundum stafum þurh bōceras geleornode, þæt hē  
 6 æfter medmiclum fæce in scopgereorde mid þā mæstan  
 7 swētnisse ond inbryrdnisse geglengde, ond in Ēngliscgereorde  
 8 wel geworht forþ brōhte. Ond for his lēopsongum  
 1 mōnigra mōnna mōd oft to worulde forhogdnisse ond tō  
 2 geþeodnisse þæs heofonlican lifes onbærnde wæron. Ond  
 3 ēac swelce 2 mōnige oðre æfter him in Ōngelþeode ongunnon  
 4 æfēste lēoð wyrcan, ac nænig hwæðre him þæt gelice  
 5 dōn ne meahte; for þon hē nālæs frōm mōnnum nē ðurh  
 6 mōn gelæred wæs þæt hē ðone lēoðcræft leornade, ac hē  
 7 wæs godcundlice gefultumod, ond þurh Godes gife þone  
 8 songcræft onfēng; ond hē for ðon næfre nōht lēasunge,  
 9 nē idles lēopes wyrcan ne meahte, ac efne þā ān ðā ðe tō  
 10 æfēstnisse 1 belumpon ond his þā æfēstan tungan gedafenode  
 11 singan.

112

12 Wæs hē, sē mōn, in weoruldhāde 3 geseted oð þā tide þe  
 13 hē wæs gelyfdre ylde, ond næfre nænig lēoð geleornade.  
 14 Ond hē for þon oft in gebēorscipe, þonne þær wæs blisse  
 15 intinga gedēmed, þæt hēo 4 ealle sceolden þurh endebyrdnesse  
 16 be hearpan singan, þonne hē geseah þā hearpan him  
 17 nēalēcan, þonne ārās hē for sōme frōm þæm symble,  
 18 ond hām ēode tō his hūse. Þā hē þæt þā sumre tide  
 19 dyde, þæt hē forlēt þæt hūs þæs gebēorscipes, ond ūt wæs  
 1 gōngende tō nēata scipene, þāra heord him wæs þære  
 2 nihte beboden; þā hē ðā þær on gelimplicre tide his  
 3 leomu 5 on rešte gesette ond onslēpte, þa stōd him sum  
 4 mōn æt þurh swefn, ond hine hālette ond grētte, ond hine  
 5 be his nōman nēmnde: "Cædmōn, sing mē hwæthwugu."  
 6 Þā ondswarede hē, ond cwæð: "Ne cōn ic nōht singan;  
 7 ond ic for þon of þyssum gebēorscipe ūt ēode ond hider  
 8 gewāt, for þon ic nāht singan ne cūðe." Eft hē cwæð sē ðe  
 9 wið hine sprecende wæs: "Hwæðre þū meaht mē singan."  
 10 Þā cwæð hē: "Hwæt sceal ic singan?" Cwæð hē: "Sing  
 11 mē frumsceaft." Þā hē ðā þās andsware onfēng, þā

113

12 ongon hē sōna singan, in hērenesse Godes Scyppendes,  
13 þā fers onð þā word þe hē næfre ne gehýrde, þāra endebyrdnes  
14 þis is:

15 Nū sculon hērigean<sup>6</sup> heofonrīces Weard,  
16 Metodes meahthe onð his mōdgeþanc,  
17 weorc Wuldorfæder, swā hē wundra gehwæs,  
18 ēce Drihten or onstealde.

1 Hē ærest scēop eorðan bearnum  
2 heofon tō hrōfe, hālig Scyppend;  
3 þā middangeard mōncynnes Weard,  
4 ēce Drihten, æfter tēode  
5 firum foldan, Frēa ælmihtig.

6 Þā ārās hē frōm þæm slæpe, onð eal þā þe hē slæpende  
7 sōng fæste in gemynde hæfde; onð þæm wordum sōna  
8 mōnig word in þæt ilce gemet Gode wyrðes sōnges  
9 tōgeþeodde. Þā cōm hē on morgenne tō þæm tūngerēfan,  
10 sē þe his ealdormōn wæs: sægde him hwylce gife hē  
11 onfēng; onð hē hine sōna tō þære abbudissan gelædde,  
12 onð hire þæt cýðde onð sægde. Þā heht hēo gesōmnian  
13 ealle þā gelæredestan mēn onð þā leorneras, onð him  
14 onðweardum hēt secgan þæt swefn, onð þæt lēoð singan,  
15 þæt ealra heora<sup>7</sup> dōme gecoren wære, hwæt oððe hwōnan  
16 þæt cumen wære. Þā wæs him eallum gesewen, swā swā  
17 hit wæs, þæt him wære frōm Drihtne sylfum heofonlic  
1 gifu forgifen. Þā rehton heo<sup>4</sup> him onð sægdon sum hālig  
2 spell onð godcundre lāre word: bebudon him þā, gif hē  
3 meahthe, þæt hē in swīnsunge lēopsōnges þæt gehwyrfde.  
4 Þā hē ðā hæfde þā wīsan onfōngne, þā ēode hē hām tō  
5 his hūse, onð cwōm eft on morgenne, onð þý betstan  
6 lēoðe geglenged him āsōng onð āgeaf þæt him beboden  
7 wæs.

8 Ðā ongan sēo abbudisse clyppan onð lufigean<sup>8</sup> þā Godes  
9 gife in þæm mēn, onð hēo hine þā mōnade onð lærde  
10 þæt hē woruldhād forlēte onð munuchād onfēnge: onð  
11 hē þæt wel þafode. Onð hēo hine in þæt mynster onfēng  
12 mid his gōdum, onð hine geþeodde tō gesōmnunge þāra  
13 Godes þeowa, onð heht hine læran þæt getæl þæs hālgan  
14 stæres onð spelles. Onð hē eal þā hē in gehýrnesse  
15 geleornian meahthe, mid hine gemyndgade, onð swā swā  
16 clæne nēten<sup>9</sup> eodorcende in þæt swētteste lēoð gehwyrfde.  
17 Onð his sōng onð his lēoð wæron swā wynsumu tō gehýranne,  
18 þætte þā seolfan<sup>10</sup> his lārēowas æt his mūðe writon  
19 onð leornodon. Sōng hē ærest be middangeardes gesceape,  
20 onð bī fruman mōncynnes, onð eal þæt stær Genesis (þæt  
21 is sēo æreste Moyses bōc); onð eft bī ütgonge Israhēla  
22 folces of Ægypta londe, onð bī ingonge þæs gehätlandes;  
23 onð bī oðrum mōnegum spellum þæs hālgan gewrites  
1 canōnes bōca; onð bī Crīstes mēnnisnesse, onð bī his  
2 þrōwunge, onð bī his upāstignesse in heofonas; onð bī  
3 þæs Hālgan Gāstes cyme, onð þāra apostola lāre; onð eft  
4 bī þæm dæge þæs tōweardan dōmes, onð bī fyrhtu þæs  
5 tintreglican wītes, onð bī swētnesse þæs heofonlican rīces,  
6 hē monig lēoð geworhte; onð swelce<sup>2</sup> ēac oðder mōnig be  
7 þæm godcundan frēmsumnessum onð dōmum hē geworhte.  
8 In eallum þæm hē geornlice gēmdde<sup>11</sup> þæt hē mēn ātuge  
9 frōm synna lufan onð mändæda, onð tō lufan onð tō  
10 geornfulnessse āwehte gōdra dæda, for þon hē wæs, sē  
11 mōn, swīpe æfēst onð regollicum þeodscipum ēaðmōdlice  
12 underþeoded; onð wið þæm þā ðe in oðre wīsan dōn woldon,  
13 hē wæs mid welme<sup>12</sup> micelre ellenwōdnisse onbærned.  
14 Onð hē for ðon fægře ende his lif betýnde onð geþndade.

**111.1. ðysse abbudissan.** The abbess referred to is the famous Hild, or Hilda, then living in the monastery at Streones-halh, which, according to Bede, means "Bay of the Beacon." The Danes afterward gave it the name Whitby, or "White Town." The surroundings were eminently fitted to nurture England's first poet. "The natural scenery which surrounded him, the valley of the Esk, on whose sides he probably lived, the great cliffs, the billowy sea, the vast sky seen from the heights over the ocean,

114

115

116

played incessantly upon him.” (Brooke.)

Note, also, in this connection, the numerous Latin words that the introduction of Christianity (A.D. 597) brought into the vocabulary of O.E.: **abbudisse, mynster, bisceop, Læden, prēost, æstel, mancus.**

112.4-5. The more usual order of words would be **ac nænig, hwæðre, ne meahthe ðæt dōn gelice him.**

112.10-11. **oṅd his ... singan**, and which it became his (the) pious tongue to sing.

112.14-15. **blisse intinga**, for the sake of joy; but the translator has confused *laetitiae causā* (ablative) and *laetitiae causa* (nominative). The proper form would be **for blisse** with omission of **intingan**, just as *for my sake* is usually **for mē**; *for his (or their) sake*, **for him**. Cf. Mark vi, 26: “Yet for his oath’s sake, and for their sakes which sat with him, he would not reject her,” **for ðæm āðe, oṅd for ðæm þe him mid sæton**. For his sake is frequently **for his ðingon (ðingum)**, rarely **for his intingan**. **Þingon** is regularly used when the preceding genitive is a noun denoting a person: *for my wife’s sake*, **for mines wifes ðingon** (*Genesis* xx, 11), etc.

112.18-19. **þæt ... þæt hē forlēt**. The substantival clause introduced by the second **þæt** amplifies by apposition the first **þæt**: *When he then, at a certain time* (instrumental case, § 98, (2)), *did that, namely, when he left the house*. The better Mn.E. would be *this ... that*: “Added yet *this* above all, *that* he shut up John in prison” (*Luke* iv, 20).

113.1-2. **pāra ... beboden**. This does not mean that Cædmon was a herdsman, but that he served in turn as did the other secular attendants at the monastery.

113.13-14. **pāra endebyrdnes þis is**. Bede writes *Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verborum*, and gives in Latin prose a translation of the hymn from the Northumbrian dialect, in which Cædmon wrote. The O.E. version given above is, of course, not the Northumbrian original (which, however, with some variations is preserved in several of the Latin MSS. of Bede’s *History*), but a West Saxon version made also from the Northumbrian, not from the Latin.

113.15. **Nū sculon hērigean**, *Now ought we to praise*. The subject **wē** is omitted in the best MSS. Note the characteristic use of synonyms, or epithets, in this bit of O.E. poetry. Observe that it is not the *thought* that is repeated, but rather the *idea*, the *concept*, God. See p. 124.

113.17. **wundra gehwæs**. See p. 140, note on **cēnra gehwylcum**.

114.7-9. **oṅd þæm wordum ... tōgeþeodde**, and to those words he soon joined, in the same meter, many (other) words of song worthy of God. But the translator has not only blundered over Bede’s Latin (*eis mox plura in eundem modum verba Deo digna carminis adjunxit*), but sacrificed still more the idiom of O.E. The predicate should not come at the end; **in** should be followed by the dative; and for **Gode wyrðes sōnges** the better O.E. would be **sōnges Godes wyrðes**. When used with the dative **wyrð (weorð)** usually means *dear* (= *of worth*) *to*.

114.16. **pā ... gesewen**. We should expect **frōm him eallum**; but the translator has again closely followed the Latin (*visumque est omnibus*), as later (in the *Conversion of Edwin*) he renders *Talis mihi videtur* by **þyslic mē is gesewen**. **Talis (þyslic)** agreeing with a following *vita (lif)*. Ælfric, however, with no Latin before him, writes that John **weorð ðā him [= frōm Drihtene] inweardlice gelufod**. It would seem that in proportion as a past participle has the force of an adjective, the *to* relation may supplant the *by* relation; just as we say *unknown to* instead of *unknown by*, *unknown* being more adjectival than participial. **Gesewen**, therefore, may here be translated *visible, evident, patent* (= **gesynelic, sweotol**); and **gelufod, dear** (= **weorð, lēof**).

A survival of adjectival **gesewen** is found in Wycliffe’s *New Testament* (1 Cor. xv, 5-8): “He was *seyn to* Cephas, and aftir these thingis *to* enleuene; aftirward he was *seyn to* mo than fyue hundrid britheren togidere ... aftirward he was *seyn to* James, and aftirward *to* alle the apostlis. And last of alle he was *seyn to* me, as *to* a deed borun child.” The construction is frequent in Chaucer.

115.9-10. **oṅd hēo hine pā mōnade ... munuchād onfēnge**. Hild’s advice has in it the suggestion of a personal experience, for she herself had lived half of her life (thirty-three years) “before,” says Bede, “she dedicated the remaining half to our Lord in a monastic life.”

116.6. **hē mōnig lēoð geworhte**. The opinion is now gaining ground that of these “many poems” only the short hymn, already given, has come down to us. Of other poems claimed for Cædmon, the strongest arguments are advanced in favor of a part of the fragmentary poetical paraphrase of *Genesis*.

1 = æfæstnesse.

2 = swilce.

3 = woruldhāde.

4 = hīe.

5 = limu.

6 = hērian.

7 = hiera.

8 = lufian.

9 = nīeten.

10 = selfan.

11 = gīemde.

## V. ALFRED'S PREFACE TO THE PASTORAL CARE.

[Based on the Hatton MS. Of the year 597, the *Chronicle* says: "In this year, Gregory the Pope sent into Britain Augustine with very many monks, who gospelsed [preached] God's word to the English folk." Gregory I, surnamed "The Great," has ever since been considered the apostle of English Christianity, and his *Pastoral Care*, which contains instruction in conduct and doctrine for all bishops, was a work that Alfred could not afford to leave untranslated. For this translation Alfred wrote a *Preface*, the historical value of which it would be hard to overrate. In it he describes vividly the intellectual ruin that the Danes had wrought, and develops at the same time his plan for repairing that ruin.

This *Preface* and the *Battle of Ashdown* (p. 99) show the great king in his twofold character of warrior and statesman, and justify the inscription on the base of the statue erected to him in 1877, at Wantage (Berkshire), his birth-place: "Ælfred found Learning dead, and he restored it; Education neglected, and he revived it; the laws powerless, and he gave them force; the Church debased, and he raised it; the Land ravaged by a fearful Enemy, from which he delivered it. Ælfred's name will live as long as mankind shall respect the Past."]

117

1 Ælfred kyning hāteð grētan Wærferð biscep <sup>1</sup> his wordum  
2 lufflice ƿnd frēondlice; ƿnd ðē cýðan hāte ðæt mē cōm  
3 swīðe oft on gemynd, hwelce <sup>2</sup> witan iu <sup>3</sup> wæron giond <sup>4</sup>  
4 Angelcynn, ægðer ge godcundra hāda ge woruldcundra;  
5 ƿnd hū gesæliglīca tīda ðā wæron giond Angelcynn; ƿnd  
6 hū ðā kyningas ðe ðone onwald hæfdon ðæs folces on  
7 ðām dagum Gode ƿnd his ærendwrecum hērsumedon <sup>5</sup>;  
8 ƿnd hū hīe ægðer ge hiora sibbe ge hiora siodo <sup>6</sup> ge hiora  
9 onweald innanbordes gehioldon, <sup>4</sup> ƿnd ēac ūt hiora ēðel  
10 gerýmndon; ƿnd hū him ðā spēow ægðer ge mid wīge ge  
11 mid wīsdōme; ƿnd ēac ða godcundan hādas hū giorne  
12 hīe wæron ægðer ge ymb lāre ge ymb liornunga, ge ymb  
13 ealle ðā ðīowotdōmas ðe hīe Gode dōn scoldon; ƿnd hū  
14 man ūtanbordes wīsdōm ƿnd lāre hieder on lōnd sōhte,  
15 ƿnd hū wē hīe nū sceoldon ūte begietan, gif wē hīe habban  
16 sceoldon. Swæ <sup>7</sup> clæne hīo wæs oðfeallenu on Angelcynne  
17 ðæt swīðe fēawa wæron behionan Humbre ðe hiora ðēninga  
18 cūðen understōndan on Eᅅglisc oððe furðum ān ærendgewrit  
19 of Lædene on Eᅅglisc āreccēan; ƿnd ic wēne ðætte  
20 nōht mōnige begiondan Humbre nāeren. Swæ <sup>7</sup> fēawa  
21 hiora wæron ðæt ic furðum āne ānlēpne <sup>8</sup> ne mæg geðencean

1 be sūðan Tēnese, ðā ðā ic tō rīce fēng. Gode ælmihtegum  
2 sie ðonc ðætte wē nū ænigne onstāl habbað  
3 lārēowa. ƿnd for ðon ic ðē bebīode ðæt ðū dō swæ <sup>7</sup> ic  
4 gelīefe ðæt ðū wille, ðæt ðū ðē ðissa woruldðinga tō ðæm  
5 geæmetige, swæ ðū oftost mæge, ðæt ðū ðone wīsdōm ðe  
6 ðē God sealde ðær ðær ðū hiene befæstan mæge, befæste.  
7 Geðenc hwelc <sup>9</sup> wītu ūs ðā becōmon for ðisse worulde, ðā  
8 ðā wē hit nōhwæðer nē selfe ne lufodon, nē ēac oðrum  
9 mōnnum ne lēfdon <sup>10</sup>: ðone naman āne wē lufodon ðætte  
10 wē Crīstne wæren, ƿnd swīðe fēawe ðā ðēawas.

11 ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā gemunde ic ēac hū ic  
12 geseah, ær ðæm ðe hit eall forhergod wære ƿnd forbærned,  
13 hū ðā ciricean giond eall Angelcynn stōdon  
14 māðma ƿnd bōca gefylða, ƿnd ēac micel mēnigeo <sup>11</sup> Godes  
15 ðīowa; ƿnd ðā swīðe lýtle fiorme ðāra bōca wiston, for  
16 ðæm ðe hīe hiora nānwuht <sup>12</sup> ongietan ne meahton, for  
17 ðæm ðe hīe næron on hiora āgen geðīode awritene.  
18 Swelce <sup>13</sup> hīe cwæden: "Ure ieldran, ðā ðe ðās stōwa ær  
19 hioldon, hīe lufodon wīsdōm, ƿnd ðurh ðone hīe begēaton  
20 welan, ƿnd ūs lēfdon. Hēr mōn mæg gīet gesion hiora  
21 swæð, ac wē him ne cunnon æfter spyrigean, <sup>14</sup> ƿnd for  
22 ðæm wē habbað nū ægðer forlæten ge ðone welan ge ðone  
23 wīsdōm, for ðæm ðe wē noldon tō ðæm spore mid ūre  
24 mōde onlūtan."

25 ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā wundrade ic swīðe swīðe  
26 ðāra gōdena wiotona <sup>15</sup> ðe gīu wæron giond Angelcynn, ƿnd  
27 ðā bēc ealla be fullan geliornod hæfdon, ðæt hīe hiora ðā  
1 nænne dæl noldon on hiora āgen geðīode wēndan. Ac

118

119

2 ic ðā sōna eft mē selfum andwyrde, ƿnd cwæð: “Hīe ne  
3 wēndon þætte æfre męnn sceolden swæ<sup>7</sup> recceleāse weorðan,  
4 ƿnd sīo lār swæ oðfeallan; for ðære wilnunga hīe  
5 hit forlēton, ƿnd woldon ðæt hēr ðȳ mārā wīsdōm on  
6 lōnde wære ðȳ wē mā geðēoda cūðon.”

7 Ðā gemunde ic hū sīo æ wæs ærest on Ebrēisc geðīode  
8 funden, ƿnd eft, ðā hīe Crēacas geliornodon, ðā węndon  
9 hīe hīe on hiora āgen geðīode ealle, ƿnd ēac ealle oðre  
10 bēc. ƿnd eft Lāedenware swæ same, siððan hīe hīe geliornodon,  
11 hīe hīe węndon ealla ðurh wīse wealhstōdas  
12 on hiora āgen geðīode. ƿnd ēac ealla oðra Crīstena  
13 ðīoda sumne dāel hiora on hiora āgen geðīode węndon.  
14 For ðȳ mē ðyncð bętre, gif īow swæ ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac  
15 suma bēc, ðā ðe nīedbeðearfosta sīen eallum mōnnum  
16 tō wiotonne, <sup>16</sup> ðæt wē ðā on ðæt geðīode węnden ðe wē  
17 ealle gecnāwan mægen, ƿnd gedōn swæ wē swīðe ēaðe  
18 magon mid Godes fultume, gif wē ðā stilnesse habbað,  
19 ðætte eall sīo gioguð ðe nū is on Angelcynne friora  
20 mōnna, ðāra ðe ðā spēda hæbben ðæt hīe ðæm befēolan  
21 mægen, sīen tō liornunga oðfæste, ðā hwīle ðe hīe tō  
1 nānre oðerre note ne mægen, oð ðone first ðe hīe wel  
2 cunnen Eŋglisc gewrit ārædan: lære mōn siððan furður  
3 on Lādengeðīode ðā ðe mōn furðor læran wille, ƿnd tō  
4 hīerran hāde dōn wille. Ðā ic ðā gemunde hū sīo lār  
5 Lādengeðīodes ær ðissum āfeallen wæs giond Angelcynn,  
6 ƿnd ðeah mōnige cūðon Eŋglisc gewrit ārædan, ðā  
7 ongan ic ongemang oðrum mislīcum ƿnd manigfealdum  
8 bisgum ðisses kynerīces ðā bōc węndan on Eŋglisc ðe is  
9 genęmned on Lāden “Pastoralis,” ƿnd on Eŋglisc “Hierdebōc,”  
10 hwīlum word be worde, hwīlum andgit of andgiete,  
11 swæ swæ ic hīe geliornode æt Plegmunde mīnum  
12 ærcebiscepe, ƿnd æt Assere mīnum biscepe, ƿnd æt Grimbolde  
13 mīnum mæsseprīoste, ƿnd æt Iōhanne mīnum mæssepreoste.  
14 Siððan ic hīe ðā geliornod hæfde, swæ swæ  
15 ic hīe forstōd, ƿnd swæ ic hīe andgitfullicost āreccēan  
16 meahte, ic hīe on Eŋglisc āwęnde; ƿnd tō ælcum biscepstōle  
17 on mīnum rīce wille āne onsęndan; ƿnd on ælcre  
18 bið ān æstel, sē bið on fitegum mancessa. ƿnd ic bebīode  
19 on Godes naman ðæt nān mōn ðone æstel frōm  
20 ðære bēc ne dō, nē ðā bōc frōm ðæm mynstre; uncūð hū  
21 lōnge ðær swæ gelærede biscepas sīen, swæ swæ nū, Gode  
22 ðonc, wel hwær siendon. For ðȳ ic wolde ðætte hīe ealneg  
1 æt ðære stōwe wæren, būton sē biscep hīe mid him  
2 habban wille, oððe hīo hwær tō læne sīe, oððe hwā oðre  
3 bī wīte.

120

121

**117.1-2. Ælfred kyning hāteð ... hāte.** Note the change from the formal and official third person (**hāteð**) to the more familiar first person (**hāte**). So Ælfric, in his *Preface to Genesis*, writes **Ælfric munuc grēt Æðelwærd ealdormann ēadmōdlice. Ðū bæde mē, lēof, þæt ic**, etc.: *Ælfric, monk, greets Æthelweard, alderman, humbly. Thou, beloved, didst bid me that I*, etc.

**118.5.** Notice that **mæge** (l. 5) and **mæge** (l. 6) are not in the subjunctive because the sense requires it, but because they have been attracted by **gāmetige** and **befæste**. **Sīen** (p. 119, l. 15) and **hæbben** (p. 119, l. 20) illustrate the same construction.

**118.9-10.** *We liked only the reputation of being Christians, very few (of us) the Christian virtues.*

**119.14.** Alfred is here addressing the bishops collectively, and hence uses the plural **īow** (= **ēow**), not **þē**.

**119.16. ðæt wē ðā.** These three words are not necessary to the sense. They constitute the figure known as epanalepsis, in which “the same word or phrase is repeated after one or more intervening words.” **Ðā** is the pronominal substitute for **suma bēc**.

**119.17. Gedōn** is the first person plural subjunctive (from infinitive **gedōn**). It and **węnden** are in the same construction. Two things seem “better” to Alfred: (1) *that we translate*, etc., (2) *that we cause*, etc.

**119.19-21. sīo gioguð ... is ... hīe ... sīen.** Notice how the collective noun, **gioguð**, singular at first both in form and function, gradually loses its oneness before the close of the sentence is reached, and becomes plural. The construction is entirely legitimate in Mn.E. Spanish is the only modern language known to me that condemns such an

idiom: "Spanish ideas of congruity do not permit a collective noun, though denoting a plurality, to be accompanied by a plural verb or adjective in the same clause" (Ramsey, *Text-Book of Modern Spanish*, § 1452).

120.2. **lære mōn**. See § 105, 1.

120.11-13. That none of these advisers of the king, except Plegmond, a Mercian, were natives, bears out what Alfred says about the scarcity of learned men in England when he began to reign. Asser, to whose Latin *Life of Alfred*, in spite of its mutilations, we owe almost all of our knowledge of the king, came from St. David's (in Wales), and was made Bishop of Sherborne.

121.1. Translate **æt ðære stōwe** by *each in its place*. The change from plural **hie** (in **hie ... wæren**) to singular **hie** (in the clauses that follow) will thus be prepared for.

121.2-3. **oððe hwā oððe bī wīte**, or *unless some one wish to copy a new one (write thereby another)*.

1 = bisceop.

2 = hwilce.

3 = gīu.

4 = For all words with *io* (*īo*), consult Glossary under *eo* (*ēo*).

5 = hīersumedon.

6 = sidu (siodu).

7 = swā.

8 = ānlīpigne.

9 = hwilc.

10 = liefdon.

11 = mēnigu.

12 = nānwiht.

13 = swilce.

14 = spyrian.

15 = wītena.

16 = wītanne.

122

## POETRY.



### INTRODUCTORY.



In [Section II., Structure](#), the stress markers ´ and ` are intended to display above the macron - or (rarely) breve `:

´ x `

Some computers will instead show them after (to the right of) the macron. "Resolved stress" (two short syllables acting as one long) is shown with a double breve below the syllables:

˘˘ x

If your computer does not have this character, it will probably display a box or question mark between the two syllables.

## I. HISTORY.

### (a) Old English Poetry as a Whole.

NORTHUMBRIA was the home of Old English poetry. Beginning with Cædmon and his school A.D. 670, Northumbria maintained her poetical supremacy till A.D. 800, seven years before which date the ravages of the Danes had begun. When Alfred ascended the throne of Wessex (871), the Danes had destroyed the seats of learning throughout the whole of Northumbria. As Whitby had been "the cradle of English poetry," Winchester (Alfred's capital) became now the cradle of English prose; and the older poems that had survived the fire and sword of the Vikings were translated from the original Northumbrian dialect into the West Saxon dialect. It is, therefore, in the West Saxon dialect that these poems <sup>1</sup> have come down to us.

Old English poetry contains in all only about thirty thousand lines; but it includes epic, lyric, didactic, elegiac, and allegorical poems, together with war-ballads, paraphrases, riddles, and charms. Of the five elegiac poems (*Wanderer*, *Seafarer*, *Ruin*, *Wife's Complaint*, and *Husband's Message*), the *Wanderer* is the most artistic, and best portrays the gloomy contrast between past happiness and present grief so characteristic of the Old English lyric.

Old English literature has no love poems. The central themes of its poets are battle and bereavement, with a certain grim resignation on the part of the hero to the issues of either. The

123



movement of the thought is usually abrupt, there being a noticeable poverty of transitional particles, or connectives, "which," says Ten Brink, "are the cement of sentence-structure."

### (b) Beowulf.

The greatest of all Old English poems is the epic, *Beowulf*.<sup>2</sup> It consists of more than three thousand lines, and probably assumed approximately its present form in Northumbria about A.D. 700. It is a crystallization of continental myths; and, though nothing is said of England, the story is an invaluable index to the social, political, and ethical ideals of our Germanic ancestors before and after they settled along the English coast. It is most poetical, and its testimony is historically most valuable, in the character-portraits that it contains. The fatalism that runs through it, instead of making the characters weak and less human, serves at times rather to dignify and elevate them. "Fate," says Beowulf (l. 572), recounting his battle with the sea-monsters, "often saves an undoomed man *if his courage hold out*."

124

"The ethical essence of this poetry," says Ten Brink, "lies principally in the conception of manly virtue, undismayed courage, the stoical encounter with death, silent submission to fate, in the readiness to help others, in the clemency and liberality of the prince toward his thanes, and the self-sacrificing loyalty with which they reward him."

NOTE 1.—Many different interpretations have been put upon the story of *Beowulf* (for argument of story, see texts). Thus Müllenhoff sees in Grendel the giant-god of the storm-tossed equinoctial sea, while Beowulf is the Scandinavian god Freyr, who in the spring drives back the sea and restores the land. Laistner finds the prototype of Grendel in the noxious exhalations that rise from the Frisian coast-marshes during the summer months; Beowulf is the wind-hero, the autumnal storm-god, who dissipates the effluvia.

1. This does not, of course, include the few short poems in the *Chronicle*, or that portion of *Genesis* (*Genesis B*) supposed to have been put directly into West Saxon from an Old Saxon original. There still remain in Northumbrian the version of *Cædmon's Hymn*, fragments of the *Ruthwell Cross*, *Bede's Death-Song*, and the *Leiden Riddle*.

2. The word *bēowulf*, says Grimm, meant originally *bee-wolf*, or *bee-enemy*, one of the names of the woodpecker. Sweet thinks the bear was meant. But the word is almost certainly a compound of *Bēow* (cf. O.E. **bēow** = grain), a Danish demigod, and *wulf* used as a mere suffix.

## II. STRUCTURE.

### (a) Style.

In the structure of Old English poetry the most characteristic feature is the constant repetition of the idea (sometimes of the thought) with a corresponding variation of phrase, or epithet. When, for example, the Queen passes into the banquet hall in *Beowulf*, she is designated at first by her name, **Wealhþēow**; she is then described in turn as **cwēn Hrōðgāres** (*Hrothgar's queen*), **gold-hroden** (*the gold-adorned*), **frēolic wif** (*the noble woman*), **ides Helminga** (*the Helmings' lady*), **bēag-hroden cwēn** (*the ring-adorned queen*), **mōde gepungen** (*the high-spirited*), and **gold-hroden frēolicu folc-cwēn** (*the gold-adorned, noble folk-queen*).

125

And whenever the sea enters largely into the poet's verse, not content with simple (uncompounded) words (such as **sǣ**, **lagu**, **holm**, **strēam**, **mēre**, etc.), he will use numerous other equivalents (phrases or compounds), such as **wapema gebind** (*the commingling of waves*), **lagu-flōd** (*the sea-flood*), **lagu-stræt** (*the sea-street*), **swan-rād** (*the swan-road*), etc. These compounds are usually nouns, or adjectives and participles used in a sense more appositive than attributive.

It is evident, therefore, that this abundant use of compounds, or periphrastic synonyms, grows out of the desire to repeat the idea in varying language. It is to be observed, also, that the Old English poets rarely make any studied attempt to balance phrase against phrase or clause against clause. Theirs is a repetition of idea, rather than a parallelism of structure.

NOTE 1.—It is impossible to tell how many of these synonymous expressions had already become stereotyped, and were used, like many of the epithets in the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, purely as padding. When, for example, the poet tells us that at the most critical moment Beowulf's sword failed him, adding in the same breath, **iren ær-gōd** (*matchless blade*), we conclude that the bard is either nodding or parroting.

### (b) Meter.

[Re-read § 10, (3).]

*Primary Stress.*

Old English poetry is composed of certain rhythmically ordered combinations of accented and unaccented syllables. The accented syllable (the arsis) is usually long, and will be indicated by the macron with the acute accent over it (ˉ); when short, by the breve with the same accent (˘). The unaccented syllable or syllables (the thesis) may be long or short, and will be indicated by the oblique cross (×).

126

### Secondary Stress.

A secondary accent, or stress, is usually put upon the second member of compound and derivative nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. This will be indicated by the macron with the grave accent, if the secondary stress falls on a long syllable (˘); by the breve with the same accent, if the secondary stress falls on a short syllable (˘). Nouns:

**Hrōðgāres** (˘˘), **fēondgrāpum** (˘˘), **frēomægum** (˘˘), **Ēast-Dęna** (˘˘), **Helminga** (˘˘),  
**Scyldinga** (˘˘), **ānhaga** (˘˘), **Ecgbēowes** (˘˘), **sinc-fato** (˘˘).

Adjectives: <sup>1</sup>

**ǣghwylcne** (˘˘), **brīsthȳdig** (˘˘), **gold-hroden** (˘˘), **drēorigne** (˘˘), **gyldenre** (˘˘),  
**ōðerne** (˘˘), **gǣstlicum** (˘˘), **wynsume** (˘˘), **ǣnigne** (˘˘).

Adverbs: <sup>2</sup>

**unsōfte** (˘˘), **heardlice** (˘˘), **seṃninga** (˘˘).

The Old English poets place also a secondary accent upon the ending of present participles (-**ende**), and upon the penultimate of weak verbs of the second class (§ 130), provided the root-syllable is long. <sup>3</sup> Present participles:

**slǣpendne** (˘˘), **wīs-hycgende** (˘˘), **flēotendra** (˘˘), **hrēosende** (˘˘).

Weak verbs:

**swynsode** (˘˘), **pancode** (˘˘), **wānigean** (˘˘), **scēawian** (˘˘), **scēawige** (˘˘),  
**hlifian** (˘˘).

### Resolved Stress.

A short accented syllable followed in the same word by an unaccented syllable (usually short also) is equivalent to one long accented syllable (˘ = ˘). This is known as a resolved stress, and will be indicated thus, ˘˘;

**hæleða** (˘˘), **guman** (˘˘), **Gode** (˘˘), **sele-ful** (˘˘), **ides** (˘˘), **fyrena** (˘˘),  
**maðelode** (˘˘), **hogode** (˘˘), **mægen-ellen** (˘˘), **hige-þihtigne** (˘˘),  
**Metudes** (˘˘), **lagulāde** (˘˘), **unlyfigendes** (˘˘), **biforan** (˘˘), **forþolian** (˘˘),  
**baðian** (˘˘), **worolde** (˘˘).

Resolution of stress may also attend secondary stresses:

**sinc-fato** (˘˘), **dryht-sele** (˘˘), **ferðloca** (˘˘), **forðwege** (˘˘).

### The Normal Line.

Every normal line of Old English poetry has four primary accents, two in the first half-line and two in the second half-line. These half-lines are separated by the cesura and united by alliteration, the alliterative letter being found in the first stressed syllable of the second half-line. This syllable, therefore, gives the cue to the scansion of the whole line. It is also the only alliterating syllable in the second half-line. The first half-line, however, usually has two alliterating syllables, but frequently only one (the ratio being about three to two in the following selections). When the first half-line contains but one alliterating syllable, that syllable marks the first stress, rarely the second. The following lines are given in the order of their frequency:

- (1) **þær wæs hæleða hléahtor; hlȳn swýnsode.**
- (2) **móde geþungen, médo-ful ætbær.**
- (3) **sóna þæt onfunde fyrena hýrde.**

Any initial vowel or diphthong may alliterate with any other initial vowel or diphthong; but a consonant requires the same consonant, except **st**, **sp**, and **sc**, each of which alliterates only with itself.

Remembering, now, that either half-line (especially the second) may begin with several unaccented syllables (these syllables being known in types A, D, and E as the *anacrusis*), but that neither half-line can end with more than one unaccented syllable, the student may begin at once to read and properly accentuate Old English poetry. It will be found that the alliterative principle does not operate mechanically, but that the poet employs it for the purpose of emphasizing the words that are really most important. Sound is made subservient to sense.

When, from the lack of alliteration, the student is in doubt as to what word to stress, let him first get the exact meaning of the line, and then put the emphasis on the word or words that seem to bear the chief burden of the poet's thought.

NOTE 1.—A few lines, rare or abnormal in their alliteration or lack of alliteration, may here be noted. In the texts to be read, there is one line with no alliteration: *Wanderer* 58; three of the type *a ... b | a ... b*: *Beowulf* 654, 830, 2746; one of the type *a ... a | b ... a*: *Beowulf* 2744; one of the type *a ... a | b ... b | c ... a*: *Beowulf* 2718; and one of the type *a ... b | c ... a*: *Beowulf* 2738.

### The Five Types.

By an exhaustive comparative study of the metrical unit in Old English verse, the half-line,

Professor Eduard Sievers,<sup>4</sup> of the University of Leipzig, has shown that there are only five types, or varieties, employed. These he classifies as follows, the perpendicular line serving to separate the so-called feet, or measures:

1. A     ' × | ' ×
2. B     × ' | × '
3. C     × ' | ' ×
4. D     { D<sup>1</sup> ' | ' ×  
          D<sup>2</sup> ' | ' ×
5. E     { E<sup>1</sup> ' × | ' ×  
          E<sup>2</sup> ' × | ' ×

It will be seen (1) that each half-line contains two, and only two, feet; (2) that each foot contains one, and only one, primary stress; (3) that A is trochaic, B iambic; (4) that C is iambic-trochaic; (5) that D and E consist of the same feet but in inverse order.

*The Five Types Illustrated.*

[All the illustrations, as hitherto, are taken from the texts to be read. The figures prefixed indicate whether first or second half-line is cited. B = *Beowulf*; W = *Wanderer*.]

1. TYPE A, ' × | ' ×

Two or more unaccented syllables (instead of one) may intervene between the two stresses, but only one may follow the last stress. If the thesis in either foot is the second part of a compound it receives, of course, a secondary stress.

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| (2) <b>ful gesealde</b> , B. 616,                           | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (1) <b>wīdre gewindan</b> , B. 764,                         | ' × ×   ' ×         |
| (1) <sup>5</sup> <b>Gemunde þā sē gōða</b> , B. 759,        | ×   ' × × ×   ' ×   |
| (1) <sup>5</sup> <b>swylce hē on ealder-dagum</b> , B. 758, | × × × ×   ' ×   ' × |
| (1) <b>ȳþde swā þisne eardgeard</b> , W. 85,                | ' × × × ×   ' ×     |
| (1) <b>wīs-fæst wordum</b> , B. 627,                        | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (1) <b>gryre-lēoð galan</b> , B. 787,                       | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (2) <b>somod ætgædre</b> , W. 39,                           | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (1) <b>duguðe ond geogoðe</b> , B. 622,                     | ' × × ×   ' ×       |
| (1) <b>fæger fold-bold</b> , B. 774,                        | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (1) <b>atelic egesa</b> , B. 785,                           | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (2) <b>goldwine mīnne</b> , W. 22,                          | ' ×   ' ×           |
| (1) <b>egesān þēon</b> [> *þīhan: § 118], B. 2737,          | ' ×   ' ×           |

NOTE.—Rare forms of A are ' × | ' × (does not occur in texts), ' × | ' × (occurs once, B. 781 (1)), and ' × | ' × (once, B. 2743 (1)).

2. TYPE B, × ' | × '

Two, but not more than two, unaccented syllables may intervene between the stresses. The type of B most frequently occurring is × × ' | × '.

- |  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| (1) <b>ond þā frēolic wīf</b> , B. 616,                    | × × '   × '       |
| (2) <b>hē on lust geþeah</b> , B. 619,                     | × × '   × '       |
| (2) <b>þā se æðeling giong</b> , B. 2716,                  | × × '   × '       |
| (2) <b>seah on epta geweorc</b> , B. 2718,                 | × × '   × × '     |
| (1) <b>ofer flōða genipu</b> , B. 2809,                    | × × '   × × ' ×   |
| (1) <b>forþam mē witan ne þearf</b> , B. 2742,             | × × × '   × × '   |
| (2) <b>þaes þe hire se willa gelamp</b> , B. 627,          | × × × × '   × × ' |
| (1) <b>forþon ne mæg weorþan wīs</b> , W. 64,              | × × × × '   × '   |
| (1) <b>Næfre ic ænegum</b> [= æn'gum] <b>mēn</b> , B. 656, | × × × '   × '     |

NOTE.—In the last half-line Sievers substitutes the older form **ængum**, and supposes elision of the e in **Næfre** (= **Næfr-ic**: × × ' | × ').

3. TYPE C, × ' | ' ×

The conditions of this type are usually satisfied by compound and derivative words, and the second stress (not so strong as the first) is frequently on a short syllable. The two arses rarely alliterate. As in B, two unaccented syllables in the first thesis are more common than one.

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| (1) <b>þæt hēo on ænigne</b> , B. 628,       | × × × '   ' × |
| (1) <b>þæt ic ānunga</b> , B. 635,           | × × '   ' ×   |
| (2) <b>ēode gold-hroden</b> , B. 641,        | × × '   ' ×   |
| (1) <b>gemyne mærdō</b> , B. 660,            | × '   ' ×     |
| (1) <b>on þisse meodu-healle</b> , B. 639,   | × × × '   ' × |
| (2) <b>æt brimes nosan</b> , B. 2804,        | × '   ' ×     |
| (2) <b>æt Wealhþéon</b> [= -þéowan], B. 630, | × '   ' ×     |
| (1) <b>geond lagulāde</b> , W. 3,            | × '   ' ×     |
| (1) <b>Swā cwæð eardstapa</b> , W. 6,        | × × '   ' ×   |
| (2) <b>éalā byrnwiga</b> , W. 94,            | × × '   ' ×   |

(2) **nō þær fela bringeð**, W. 54,

$\times \times \check{\times} | \acute{\times}$

4. TYPE D,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} D^1 \acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times} \\ D^2 \acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times} \end{array} \right.$

Both types of D may take one unaccented syllable between the two primary stresses ( $\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ ,  $\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ ). The secondary stress in D<sup>1</sup> falls usually on the second syllable of a compound or derivative word, and this syllable (as in C) is frequently short.

(a) D<sup>1</sup>  $\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$

(1) **cwēn Hrōðgāres**, B. 614,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$

(2) **dǣl æghwylcne**, B. 622,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$

(1) **Bēowulf maðelode**, B. 632,

$\acute{\times} \times | \check{\times} \check{\times}$

(2) **slāt unwearnum**, B. 742,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$

(1) **wrāþra wælsleahta**, W. 7,

$\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$

(1) **wōd wintercearig** [= **wint'rcearig**], W. 24,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \check{\times}$

(1) **sōhte seþe drēorig**, W. 25,

$\acute{\times} \times | \check{\times} \grave{\times}$

(1) **ne sōhte searo-nīðas**, B. 2739,

$\times | \acute{\times} \times | \check{\times} \grave{\times}$

NOTE.—There is one instance in the texts (B. 613, (1)) of apparent  $\acute{\times} \times \times | \acute{\times} \check{\times}$ : **word wæron wynsume**. (The triple alliteration has no significance. The sense, besides, precludes our stressing **wæron**.) The difficulty is avoided by bringing the line under the A type:  $\acute{\times} \times \times | \acute{\times} \check{\times}$ .

(b) D<sup>2</sup>  $\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(2) **Forð nēar ætstōp**, B. 746,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(2) **eorl furður stōp**, B. 762,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(2) **Deþum eallum wearð**, B. 768,

$\check{\times} | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(1) **grētte Gēata lēod**, B. 626,

$\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(1) **ænig yrfe-weard**, B. 2732,

$\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(1) **hrēosan hrim and snāw**, W. 48,

$\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

(2) **swimmað eft on weg**, W. 53,

$\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times}$

133

Very rarely is the thesis in the second foot expanded.

(2) **þegn ungemete till**, B. 2722,

$\acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \times \times \times \grave{\times}$

(1) **hrūsan heolster biwrāh**, W. 23,

$\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times \times \grave{\times}$

5. TYPE E,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} E^1 \acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \\ E^2 \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times} | \acute{\times} \end{array} \right.$

The secondary stress in E<sup>1</sup> falls frequently on a short syllable, as in D<sup>1</sup>.

(a) E<sup>1</sup>  $\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(1) **wyrmlicum fāh**, W. 98,

$\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(2) **medo-ful ætbær**, B. 625,

$\check{\times} \check{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(1) **sǣ-bāt gesæt**, B. 634,

$\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(1) **sige-folca swēg**, B. 645,

$\check{\times} \check{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(2) **Norð-Deþum stōd**, B. 784,

$\acute{\times} \check{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(1) **fēond-grāpum fæst**, B. 637,

$\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(2) **wyn eal gedrēas**, W. 36,

$\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

(2) **feor oft gemon**, W. 90,

$\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

As in D<sup>2</sup>, the thesis in the first foot is very rarely expanded.

(1) **wīn-ærnes geweald**, B. 655,

$\acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times \times | \acute{\times}$

(1) **Hafa nū onð geheald**, B. 659,

$\check{\times} \check{\times} \times \times | \acute{\times}$

(1) **searo-þoncum besmiðod**, B. 776,

$\check{\times} \check{\times} \times \times | \check{\times}$

NOTE.—Our ignorance of Old English sentence-stress makes it impossible for us to draw a hard-and-fast line in all cases between D<sup>2</sup> and E<sup>1</sup>. For example, in these half-lines (already cited),

**wyn eal gedrēas**

**feor oft gemon**

**Forð nēar ætstōp**

if we throw a strong stress on the adverbs that precede their verbs, the type is D<sup>2</sup>. Lessen the stress on the adverbs and increase it on the verbs, and we have E<sup>1</sup>. The position of the adverbs furnishes no clue; for the order of words in Old English was governed not only by considerations of relative emphasis, but by syntactic and euphonic considerations as well.

(b) E<sup>2</sup>  $\acute{\times} \times \grave{\times} | \acute{\times}$

This is the rarest of all types. It does not occur in the texts, there being but one instance of this type (l. 2437 (2)), and that doubtful, in the whole of *Beowulf*.

#### Abnormal Lines.

The lines that fall under none of the five types enumerated are comparatively few. They may be

134

divided into two classes, (1) hypermetrical lines, and (2) defective lines.

(1) HYPERMETRICAL LINES.

Each hypermetrical half-line has usually three stresses, thus giving six stresses to the whole line instead of two. These lines occur chiefly in groups, and mark increased range and dignity in the thought. Whether the half-line be first or second, it is usually of the A type without anacrusis. To this type belong the last five lines of the *Wanderer*. Lines 92 and 93 are also unusually long, but not hypermetrical. The first half-line of 65 is hypermetrical, a fusion of A and C, consisting of (´×××´ | ´×).

(2) DEFECTIVE LINES.

The only defective lines in the texts are B. 748 and 2715 (the second half-line in each). As they stand, these half-lines would have to be scanned thus:

ræhte ongēan     ´ × | × ´  
bealo-nīð wēoll     ´ × | ´

Sievers emends as follows:

ræhte tōgēanes     ´ × × | ´ × = A  
bealo-nīðe wēoll     ´ × ´ × | ´ = E<sup>1</sup>

These defective half-lines are made up of syntactic combinations found on almost every page of Old English prose. That they occur so rarely in poetry is strong presumptive evidence, if further evidence were needed, in favor of the adequacy of Sievers' five-fold classification.

NOTE.—All the lines that could possibly occasion any difficulty to the student have been purposely cited as illustrations under the different types. If these are mastered, the student will find it an easy matter to scan the lines that remain.

1. It will be seen that the adjectives are chiefly derivatives in **-ig, -en, -er, -lic,** and **-sum**.
2. Most of the adverbs belonging here end in **-lice, -unga,** and **-inga, § 93, (1), (2):** such words as **æt-gædere, on-gēan, on-wég, tō-gēanes, tō-míddes,** etc., are invariably accented as here indicated.
3. It will save the student some trouble to remember that this means long by nature (**licodon**), or long by position (**swynsode**), or long by resolution of stress (**maðelode**),—see next paragraph.
4. Sievers' two articles appeared in the *Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur*, Vols. X (1885) and XII (1887). A brief summary, with slight modifications, is found in the same author's *Altgermanische Metrik*, pp. 120-144 (1893).

Before attempting to employ Sievers' types, the student would do well to read several pages of Old English poetry, taking care to accentuate according to the principles already laid down. In this way his ear will become accustomed to the rhythm of the line, and he will see more clearly that Sievers' work was one primarily of systematization. Sievers himself says: "I had read Old English poetry for years exactly as I now scan it, and long before I had the slightest idea that what I did instinctively could be formulated into a system of set rules." (*Altgermanische Metrik, Vorwort*, p. 10.)

5. The first perpendicular marks the limit of the anacrusis.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.



VI. EXTRACTS FROM BEOWULF.

THE BANQUET IN HEOROT. [Lines 612-662.]

[The Heyne-Socin text has been closely followed. I have attempted no original emendations, but have deviated from the Heyne-Socin edition in a few cases where the Grein-Wülker text seemed to give the better reading.

The argument preceding the first selection is as follows: Hrothgar, king of the Danes, or Scyldings, elated by prosperity, builds a magnificent hall in which to feast his retainers; but a monster, Grendel by name, issues from his fen-haunts, and night after night carries off thane after thane from the banqueting hall. For twelve years these ravages continue. At last Beowulf, nephew of Hygelac, king of the Geats (a people of South Sweden), sails with fourteen chosen companions to Dane-land, and offers his services to the aged Hrothgar. "Leave me alone in the hall to-night," says Beowulf. Hrothgar accepts Beowulf's proffered aid, and before the dread hour of visitation comes, the time is spent in wassail. The banquet scene follows.]

Þær wæs hæleþa hleahtor,     hlyn swynsode,  
word wæron wynsume.     Ēode Wealhþēow forð,  
cwēn Hrōðgāres,     cynna gemyndig;

grētte gold-hroden guman on healle,	[615]	
ꝥnd þā frēolic wif ful gesealde		
ærest Ēast-Dęna ēþel-wearde,		
bæd hine bliðne æt þære bēor-þęge,		
lēodum lēofne; hē on lust geþeah		
sympel ꝥnd seþe-ful, sige-rōf kyning.	[620]	
Ymb-ēode þā ides Helminga		
duguðe ꝥnd geogoðe dæl æghwylcne,		
sinc-fato sealde, oð þæt sæl ālamp		137
þæt hīo <sup>1</sup> Bēowulfe, bēag-hroden cwēn,		
mōde geþungen, medo <sup>2</sup> -ful ætbær;	[625]	
grētte Gēata lēod, Gode þancode		
wīs-fæst wordum, þæs þe hire se willa gelamp,		
þæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelyfde		
fyrena frōfre. Hē þæt ful geþeah,		
wæl-rēow wiga, æt Wealhþēon,	[ 630]	
ꝥnd þā gyddode gūðe gefýsed;		
Bēowulf maðelode, bearn Ecgþēowes:		
“Ic þæt hogode, þā ic on holm gestāh,		
sæ-bāt gesæt mid mīnra seþga gedriht,		
þæt ic ānunga ēowra lēoda	[635]	
willan geworhte, oððe on wæl crunge		
fēond-grāpum fæst. Ic gefrēmman sceal		
eorlic eþlen, oððe eude-dæg		
on þisse meodu <sup>2</sup> -healle mīnne gebīdan.”		
Þām wīfe þā word wel līcodon,	[640]	
gilp-cwide Gēates; ēode gold-hroden		
frēolicu folc-cwēn tō hire frēan sittan.		
Þā wæs eft swā ær inne on healle		
þrýð-word sprecen, <sup>3</sup> þēod on sælum,		
sige-folca swēg, oþ þæt seþninga	[645]	
sunu Healfðenes sēcean wolde		138
æfen-ræste; wiste þæm āhlæcan <sup>4</sup>		
tō þæm hēah-seþe hilde geþinged,		
siððan hīe sunnan lēoht gesēon <i>ne</i> meahton		
oððe nīpende niht ofer ealle,	[650]	
scadu-helma gesceapu scrīðan cwōman, <sup>5</sup>		
wan under wolcnum. Werod eall ārās;		
grētte þā <i>giddum</i> guma oðerne		
Hrōðgār Bēowulf, ꝥnd him hæl ābēad,		
wīn-ærnes geweald, ꝥnd þæt word ācwæð:	[655]	
“Næfre ic ænegum <sup>6</sup> męn ær ālyfde,		
siððan ic hōnd ꝥnd rōnd heþban mihte,		
ðrýþ-ærn Dęna būton þē nū þā.		
Hafa nū ꝥnd geheald hūsa sēlest,		
gemyne mæþþo, <sup>7</sup> mægen-eþlen cýð,	[ 660]	
waca wið wrāðum. Ne bið þē wilna gād,		
gif þū þæt eþlen-weorc aldre <sup>8</sup> gedīgest.”		

**623. sinc-fato sealde.** Banning (*Die epischen Formeln im Beowulf*) shows that the usual translation, *gave costly gifts*, must be given up; or, at least, that the *costly gifts* are nothing more than *beakers of mead*. The expression is an epic formula for *passing the cup*.

**638-39. eude-ðæg ... mīnne.** This unnatural separation of noun and possessive is frequent in O.E. poetry, but almost unknown in prose.

**641-42. ēode ... sittan.** The poet might have employed **tō sittanne** (§ 108, (1)); but in poetry the infinitive is often used for the gerund. Alfred himself uses the infinitive or the gerund to express purpose after **gān**, **gongan**, **cuman**, and **sendan**.

**647-51. wiste ... cwōman.** A difficult passage, even with Thorpe's inserted **ne**; but there is no need of putting a period after **geþinged**, or of translating **oððe** by *and*: *He (Hrothgar) knew that battle was in store (geþinged) for the monster in the high hall, after [= as soon as] they could no longer see the sun's light, or [= that is] after night came darkening over all, and shadowy figures stalking*. The subject of **cwōman** [= **cwōmon**] is **niht** and **gesceapu**.

The student will note that the infinitive (**scrīðan**) is here employed as a present participle after a verb of motion (**cwōman**). This construction with **cuman** is frequent in prose and poetry. The infinitive expresses the kind of motion: **ic cōm drīfan** = *I came driving*.

- 1 = hēo.  
 2 = medu-.  
 3 = gesprečen.  
 4 = āglæcan.  
 5 = cwōmon.  
 6 = ænigum.  
 7 = mæ̅rþe (acc. sing.).  
 8 = ealdre (instr. sing.).

THE FIGHT BETWEEN BEOWULF AND GRENDEL. [Lines 740-837.]

139

[The warriors all retire to rest except Beowulf. Grendel stealthily enters the hall. From his eyes gleams "a luster unlovely, likest to fire." The combat begins at once.]

Ne þæt se āglæca yldan þōhte, [ 740]

ac hē gefēng hraðe forman sīðe  
 slæpendne rinc, slāt unwearnum,  
 bāt bān-locan, blōd ēdrum dranc,  
 syn-snædum swealh; sōna hæfde  
 unlyfigendes eal gefeormod [745]

fēt ƿnd folma. Forð nēar ætstōp,  
 nam þā mid handa hige-þihtigne  
 rinc on ræste; ræhte onġēan  
 fēond mid folme; hē onfēng hraþe  
 inwit-þancum ƿnd wið earm gesæt. [ 750]

Sōna þæt onfunde fyrena hyrde,  
 þæt hē ne mētte middan-geardes,  
 eorðan scēatta, on ęlran męn

mund-gripe māran; hē on mōde wearð  
 forht, on ferhðe; nō þȳ ær fram meahte. [ 755]

Hyge wæs him hin-fūs, wolde on heolster flēon,  
 sēcan dēofla gedræg; ne wæs his drohtoð þær,  
 swylce hē on ealder<sup>1</sup>-dagum ær gemētte.

Gemunde þā se gōda mæg Higelāces  
 æfen-spræce, ūp-lang āstōd [760]

ƿnd him fæste wiðfēng; fingras burston;  
 eoten wæs ūt-weard; eorl furþur stōp.  
 Mynte se mæra, hwær hē meahte swā,  
 widre gewindan ƿnd on weg þanon  
 flēon on fęn-hopu; wiste his fingra geweald [765]

on grames grāpum. Þæt wæs gēocor sīð,  
 þæt se hearm-scaþa tō Heorute<sup>2</sup> ātēah.  
 Dryht-sęle dynede; Dęnum eallum wearð  
 ceaster-būendum, cēnra gehwylcum,  
 eorlum ealu-scerwen. Yrre wæron bēgen [770]

rēþe rēn-weardas. Ręced hlynsode;  
 þā wæs wundor micel, þæt se wīn-sęle  
 wiðhæfde heaþo-dēorum, þæt hē on hrūsan ne fēol,  
 fæger fold-bold; ac hē þæs fæste wæs  
 innan ƿnd ūtan īren-bęndum [775]

searo-þoncum besmiðod. Þær fram sylle ābēag  
 medu-bęnc mōnig, mīne gefræge,  
 golde geregnad, þær þā graman wunnon;  
 þæs ne wēndon ær witan Scyldinga,

þæt hit ā mid gemete manna ænig,  
 betlic ƿnd bān-fāg, tōbrecan meahte,  
 listum tōlūcan, nymþe līges fæðm  
 swulge on swaþule. Swēg ūp āstāg  
 nīwe geneahhe; Norð-Dęnum stōd [ 785]

atelīc ęgesa, ānra gehwylcum,  
 þāra þe of wealle wōp gehȳrdon,  
 gryre-lēoð galan Godes ƿndsacan,  
 sige-lēasne sang, sār wānigean  
 helle hæfton.<sup>3</sup> Hēold hine fæste,  
 sē þe manna wæs mægene stręngest [790]

on þæm dæge þysses lifes.  
 Nolde eorla hlēo ænige þinga  
 þone cwealm-cuman cwicne forlætan,  
 nē his lif-dagas lēoda ænigum  
 nytte tealde. Þær genehost brægd [ 795]

140

141

142

eorl Bēowulfes ealde lāfe,  
 wolde frēa-drihtnes feorh ealgian,  
 mæres þeodnes, ðær hie meahton swā.  
 Hie ðæt ne wiston, þā hie gewin drugon,  
 heard-hicgende hilde-męcgas, [800]  
 ƿnd on healfa gehwone hēawan þohton,  
 sāwle sēcan: þone syn-scaðan  
 ænig ofer eorðan irenna cyst,  
 gūþ-billa nān, grētan nolde;  
 ac hē sige-wæpnum forsworen hæfde, [805]  
 ęcga gehwylcre. Scolde his aldor<sup>4</sup>-gedāl  
 on ðæm dæge þysses lifes  
 earmlic wurðan<sup>5</sup> ƿnd se ęllor-gāst  
 on fēonda geweald feor siðian.  
 Þā þæt onfunde, sē þe fela æror [810]  
 mōdes myrðe manna cynne  
 fyrene gefrēmede (hē wæs fāg wið God),  
 þæt him se līc-homa læstan nolde,  
 ac hine se mōdega<sup>6</sup> mæg Hygelāces  
 hæfde be hōnda; wæs gehwæper oðrum [815]  
 lifigende lād. Lic-sār gebād  
 atol æglæca<sup>7</sup>; him on eaxle wearð  
 syn-dolh sweotol; seonowe onsprungon;  
 burston bān-locan. Bēowulfe wearð  
 gūð-hrēð gyfeðe. Scolde Grendel þonan [820]  
 feorh-sēoc flēon under fēn-hleoðu,<sup>8</sup>  
 sēcean wyn-lēas wīc; wiste þe geornor,  
 þæt his aldres<sup>9</sup> wæs ęnde gegongen,  
 dōgera dæg-rīm. Denum eallum wearð  
 æfter þām wæl-rāese willa gelumpen. [825]  
 Hæfde þā gefælsod, sē þe ær feorran cōm,  
 snotor ƿnd swyð-ferhð, seþe Hrōðgāres,  
 genęred wið nīðe. Niht-weorce gefeh,  
 ęllen-mærþum; hæfde East-Denum  
 Gēat-męcga lēod gilp gelæsted; [830]  
 swylce oncyððe ealle gebētte,  
 inwid-sorge, þe hie ær drugon  
 ƿnd for þrēa-nyðum þolian scoldon,  
 torn unlytel. Þæt wæs tācen sweotol,  
 syððan hilde-dēor hōnd ālēgde, [835]  
 earm ƿnd eaxle (þær wæs eal geador  
 Grendles grāpe) under gēapne hrōf.

143

**740. þæt**, the direct object of **yldan**, refers to the contest about to ensue. Beowulf, in the preceding lines, was wondering how it would result.

**746. ætstōp**. The subject of this verb and of **nam** is Grendel; the subject of the three succeeding verbs (**ræhte**, **onfēng**, **gesæt**) is Beowulf.

**751-52**. The O.E. poets are fond of securing emphasis or of stimulating interest by indirect methods of statement, by suggesting more than they affirm. This device often appears in their use of negatives (**ne**, l. 13; p. 140, l. 3; **nō**, p. 140, l. 1), and in the unexpected prominence that they give to some minor detail usually suppressed because understood; as where the narrator, wishing to describe the terror produced by Grendel's midnight visits to Heorot, says (ll. 138-139), "Then was it easy to find one who elsewhere, more commodiously, sought rest for himself." It is hard to believe that the poet saw nothing humorous in this point of view.

**755. nō ... meahte**, *none the sooner could he away*. The omission of a verb of motion after the auxiliaries **magan**, **mōtan**, **sculan**, and **willan** is very frequent. Cf. Beowulf's last utterance, p. 147, l. 17.

**768**. The lines that immediately follow constitute a fine bit of description by indication of effects. The two contestants are withdrawn from our sight; but we hear the sound of the fray crashing through the massive old hall, which trembles as in a blast; we see the terror depicted on the faces of the Danes as they listen to the strange sounds that issue from their former banqueting hall; by these sounds we, too, measure the progress and alternations of the combat. At last we hear only the "terror-lay" of Grendel, "lay of the beaten," and know that Beowulf has made good his promise at the banquet (**gilp gelæsted**).

**769. cēnra gehwylcum**. The indefinite pronouns (§ 77) may be used as adjectives, agreeing in case with their nouns; but they frequently, as here, take a partitive genitive: **ānra gehwylcum**, *to each one* (= *to each of ones*); **ænige** (instrumental) **þinga**, *for any thing* (= *for any of things*); **on healfa gehwone**, *into halves* (= *into each of halves*);



**ealra dōgra gehwām**, *every day* (= on each of all days); **ūhtna gehwylce**, *every morning* (= on each of mornings).

780. Notice that **hit**, the object of **tōbreccan**, stands for **wīn-sele**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2. **Manna** is genitive after **gemete**, not after **ænig**.

787-89. **gryre-lēoð ... hæfton** [= **hæftan**]. Note that verbs of hearing and seeing, as in Mn.E., may be followed by the infinitive. They heard *God's adversary sing* (**galan**) ... *hell's captive bewail* (**wānigean**). Had the present participle been used, the effect would have been, as in Mn.E., to emphasize the agent (the subject of the infinitive) rather than the action (the infinitive itself).

795-96. **þær ... lāfe**. Beowulf's followers now seem to have seized their swords and come to his aid, not knowing that Grendel, having forsworn war-weapons himself, is proof against the best of swords. *Then many an earl of Beowulf's* (= an earl of B. very often) *brandished his sword*. That no definite earl is meant is shown by the succeeding **hīe meahton** instead of **hē meahte**. See p. 110, Note.

799. *They did not know this* (**ðæt**), *while they were fighting*; but the first **Hīe** refers to the warriors who proffered help; the second **hīe**, to the combatants, Beowulf and Grendel. In apposition with **ðæt**, stands the whole clause, **þone synscaðan** (object of **grētan**) ... **noelde**. The second, or conjunctive, **ðæt** is here omitted before **þone**. See p. 112, note on ll. 18-19.

837. **grāpe** = genitive singular, feminine, after **eal**.

- 1 = ealdor-.
- 2 = Heorote.
- 3 = hæftan.
- 4 = ealdor-.
- 5 = weorðan.
- 6 = mōdiga.
- 7 = āglæca.
- 8 = -hliðu.
- 9 = ealdres.

BEOWULF FATALLY WOUNDED. [Lines 2712-2752.]

[Hrothgar, in his gratitude for the great victory, lavishes gifts upon Beowulf; but Grendel's mother must be reckoned with. Beowulf finds her at the sea-bottom, and after a desperate struggle slays her. Hrothgar again pours treasures into Beowulf's lap. Beowulf, having now accomplished his mission, returns to Sweden. After a reign of fifty years, he goes forth to meet a fire-spewing dragon that is ravaging his kingdom. In the struggle Beowulf is fatally wounded. Wiglaf, a loyal thane, is with him.]

144

þā sīo <sup>1</sup> wund ongʀn,  
þe him se eorð-draca ær geworhte,  
swēlan ʀnd swellan. Hē þæt sōna onfand,  
þæt him on brēostum bealo-nīð wēoll [2715]  
āttor on innan. Þā se æðeling gīong, <sup>2</sup>  
þæt hē bī wealle, wīs-hycgende,  
gesæt on sesse; seah on ęnta geweorc,  
hū þā stān-bogan stapulum fæste  
ēce eorð-řeced innan healde. [2720]  
Hyne þā mid handa heoro-drēorigne,  
þēoden mārne, þegn ungemete till,  
wine-dryhten his wætere gelafede,  
hilde-sædne, ʀnd his helm onspēon.  
Bīowulf <sup>3</sup> maðelode; hē ofer bēnne spræc, [2725]  
wunde wæl-blēate; wisse hē gearwe,  
þæt hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde  
eorðan wynne; þā wæs eall sceacen  
dōgor-gerimes, dēað ungemete nēah:  
"Nū ic suna mīnum syllan wolde [2730]  
gūð-gewædu, þær mē gifeðe swā  
ænig yrfe-weard æfter wurde  
lice gelęnge. Ic ðās lēode hēold  
fiftig wintra; næs se folc-cyning  
ymbe-sittendra ænig þāra, [2735]  
þe mec gūð-winum grētan dorste,  
ęgesan ðēon. Ic on earde bād  
mæl-gesceafta, hēold mīn tela,  
nē sōhte searo-nīðas, nē mē swōr fela  
āða on unriht. Ic ðæs ealles mæg,  
feorh-bęnnum sēoc, gefēan habban;  
for-þām mē wītan ne ðearf Waldend <sup>4</sup> fira  
morðor-bealo <sup>5</sup> māga, þonne mīn sceaceð [2740]

145

lif of lice. Nū ðū lungre geong<sup>6</sup>  
 hord scēawian under hārne stān, [2745]  
 Wīglāf lēofa, nū se wyrm ligeð,  
 swefeð sære wund, since berēafod.  
 Bīo<sup>7</sup> nū on ofoste, þæt ic ær-welan,  
 gold-æht ongite, gearo scēawige  
 swegle searo-gimmas, þæt ic ðy sēft mæge [2750]  
 æfter mādðum-welan mīn ālætan  
 lif ond lēod-scipe, þone ic lōnge hēold.”

146

2716. **se æðeling** is Beowulf.

2718. **ęnta geweorc** is a stereotyped phrase for anything that occasions wonder by its size or strangeness.

2720. **healde**. Heyne, following Etmüller, reads **hēoldon**, thus arbitrarily changing mood, tense, and number of the original. Either mood, indicative or subjunctive, would be legitimate. As to the tense, the narrator is identifying himself in time with the hero, whose wonder was “how the stone-arches ... *sustain* the ever-during earth-hall”: the construction is a form of *oratio recta*, a sort of *miratio recta*. The singular **healde**, instead of **healden**, has many parallels in the dependent clauses of *Beowulf*, most of these being relative clauses introduced by **þāra þe** (= *of those that ...* + a singular predicate). In the present instance, the predicate has doubtless been influenced by the proximity of **eorð-reced**, a *quasi*-subject; and we have no more right to alter to **healden** or **hēoldon** than we have to change Shakespeare’s *gives* to *give* in

“Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath *gives*.”

(*Macbeth*, II, I, 61.)

2722. The **þegn ungemete till** is Wiglaf, the bravest of Beowulf’s retainers.

2725. **hē ofer þenne spræc**. The editors and translators of *Beowulf* invariably render **ofer** in this passage by *about*; but Beowulf says not a word about his wound. The context seems to me to show plainly that **ofer** (cf. Latin *supra*) denotes here opposition = *in spite of*. We read in *Genesis*, l. 594, that Eve took the forbidden fruit **ofer Drihtenes word**. Beowulf fears (l. 2331) that he may have ruled unjustly = **ofer ealde riht**; and he goes forth (l. 2409) **ofer willan** to confront the dragon.

2731-33. **þær mē ... gelenge**, *if so be that (þær ... swā) any heir had afterwards been given me (mē gifeðe ... æfter wurde) belonging to my body*.

2744-45. **geong** [= **gong**] ... **scēawian**. See note on **ēode ... sittan**, p. 137, ll. 19-20. In Mn.E. *Go see, Go fetch*, etc., is the second verb imperative (coördinate with the first), or subjunctive (*that you may see*), or infinitive without *to*?

2751-52. **mīn ... lif**. See note on **ęnde-dæg ... mīnne**, p. 137, ll. 16-17.

- 1 = sēo.
- 2 = gēong.
- 3 = Bēowulf.
- 4 = Wealdend.
- 5 = morðor-bealu.
- 6 = gong (gang).
- 7 = Bēo.

#### BEOWULF’S LAST WORDS. [Lines 2793-2821.]

[Wiglaf brings the jewels, the tokens of Beowulf’s triumph. Beowulf, rejoicing to see them, reviews his career, and gives advice and final directions to Wiglaf.]

*Bīowulf*<sup>1</sup> maðelode,  
 gōmel on gīohðe (gold scēawode):  
 “Ic þāra frætwa Frēan ealles ðanc, [ 2795]  
 Wuldur-cyninge, wordum sęcge  
 ęcum Dryhtne, þe ic hēr on starie,  
 þæs þe ic mōste mīnum lēodum  
 ær swylt-dæge swylc gestrȳnan.  
 Nū ic on māðma hord mīne bebohte [ 2800]  
 frōde feorh-lęge, fręmmað gē nū  
 lēoda þearfe; ne mæg ic hēr lęng wesan.  
 Hātað heaðo-mære hlāw gewyrcean,  
 beorhtne æfter bæle æt brimes nosan;  
 sē scel<sup>2</sup> tō gemyndum mīnum lēodum [ 2805]  
 hēah hlifian on Hręnes næsse,  
 þæt hit sē-liðend syððan hātan<sup>3</sup>  
 Bīowulfes<sup>1</sup> biorh<sup>1</sup> þā þe brentingas  
 ofer flōda genipu feorran drīfað.”  
 Dyde him of healse hring gyldenre [ 2810]  
 þīoden<sup>1</sup> prīst-hȳdig; þegne gesealde,

147

geongum gār-wigan, gold-fāhne helm,  
 bēah ƿnd byrnan, hēt hyne brūcan well.  
 “Pū eart ƿnde-lāf ūsses cynnes,  
 Wægmunðinga; ealle wyrd forswēop [2815]  
 mīne māgas tō metod-sceafte,  
 eorlas on ƿlne; ic him æfter sceal.”  
 Þæt wæs þām gōmelan gingeste word  
 brēost-gehygdum, ær hē bæl cure,  
 hāte heaðo-wylmas; him of hreðre gewāt [ 2820]  
 sāwol sēcean sōð-fæstra dōm.

148

2795-99. The expression **secgan þanc** takes the same construction as **þancian**; i.e., the dative of the person (**Frēan**) and the genitive (a genitive of cause) of the thing (**þāra frætwa**). Cf. note on **biddan**, p. 45. The antecedent of **þe** is **frætwa**. For the position of **on**, see § 94, (5). The clause introduced by **þæs þe** (*because*) is parallel in construction with **frætwa**, both being causal modifiers of **secge þanc**. The Christian coloring in these lines betrays the influence of priestly transcribers.

2800. *Now that I, in exchange for (on) a hoard of treasures, have bartered (bebohte) the laying down (-lege > licgan) of my old life.* The ethical codes of the early Germanic races make frequent mention of blood-payments, or life-barters. There seems to be here a suggestion of the “wergild.”

2801. **frēmnað gē**. The plural imperative (as also in **Hātað**) shows that Beowulf is here speaking not so much to Wiglaf in particular as, through Wiglaf, to his retainers in general,—to his *comitatus*.

2806. The desire for conspicuous burial places finds frequent expression in early literatures. The tomb of Achilles was situated “high on a jutting headland over wide Hellespont that it might be seen from off the sea.” Elpenor asks Ulysses to bury him in the same way. Æneas places the ashes of Misenus beneath a high mound on a headland of the sea.

2807. **hit = hlæw**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2.

2810-11. **him ... þioden**. The reference in both cases is to Beowulf, who is disarming himself (do-of > *doff*) for the last time; **þegne = to Wiglaf**.

Note, where the personal element is strong, the use of the dative instead of the more colorless possessive; **him of healse**, not **of his healse**.

2817. **ic ... sceal**. See note on **nō ... meahte**, p. 140, l. 1.

2820. **him of hreðre**. Cf. note on **him ... þioden**, p. 147, ll. 10-11.

2820-21. For construction of **gewāt ... sēcean**, see note on **ēode ... sittan**, p. 137, ll. 19-20.

1 = iō, io = ēo, eo.

2 = sceal.

3 = hāten.

## VII. THE WANDERER.

[Exeter MS. “The epic character of the ancient lyric appears especially in this: that the song is less the utterance of a momentary feeling than the portrayal of a lasting state, perhaps the reflection of an entire life, generally that of one isolated, or bereft by death or exile of protectors and friends.” (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.) I adopt Brooke’s threefold division (*Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 356): “It opens with a Christian prologue, and closes with a Christian epilogue, but the whole body of the poem was written, it seems to me, by a person who thought more of the goddess Wyrd than of God, whose life and way of thinking were uninfluenced by any distinctive Christian doctrine.”

The author is unknown.]

### PROLOGUE.

Oft him ānhaga āre gebīdeð,  
 Metudes<sup>1</sup> miltse, þeah þe hē mōdcearig  
 geond lagulāde lōnge sceolde  
 hrēran mid hōndum hrīmcealde sǣ,  
 wadan wræclǣstas: wyrd bið ful āræd! [5]  
 Swā cwæð eardstapa earfeþa<sup>2</sup> gemyndig,  
 wrāþra wælsleahta, winemǣga hryres:

### PLAINT OF THE WANDERER.

“Oft ic sceolde āna ūhtna gehwylce  
 mīne ceare cwīþan; nis nū cwicra nān,  
 þe ic him mōdsefan mīnne durre [ 10]

149

sweotule<sup>3</sup> āseċgan. Ic tō sōþe wāt  
þæt biþ in eorle indryhten þeaw,  
þæt hē his ferðlocan fæste binde,  
healde his hordcofan, hycge swā hē wille;  
ne mæg wērig mōd wyrde wiðstōndan [15]  
nē sē hrēo hyge helpe gefrēman:  
for ðon dōmgeorne drēorigne oft  
in hyra brēostcofan bindað fæste.  
Swā ic mōdsefan mīnne sceolde  
oft earmcearig ēðle bidæled, [20]  
frēomægum feor feterum sælan,  
siþþan gēara iū goldwine mīnne  
hrūsan heolster biwrāh, and ic hēan þonan  
wōd wintercearig ofer waþema gebind,  
sōhte seþe drēorig sinces bryttan, [25]  
hwær ic feor oþþe nēah findan meahte  
þone þe in meoduhealle<sup>4</sup> miltse wisse  
oþþe mec frēondlēasne frēfran wolde,  
weñian mid wynnum. Wāt sē þe cunnað  
hū slīþen bið sorg tō gefēran [30]  
þām þe him lýt hafað lēofra geholena:  
warað hine wræclāst, nāles wunden gold,  
ferðloca frēorig, nālæs foldan blæd;  
gemon hē selesēcgas and sincþege,  
hū hine on geoguðe his goldwine [35]  
weñede tō wiste: wyn eal gedrēas!  
For þon wāt sē þe sceal his winedryhtnes  
lēofes lārcwidum lōnge forþolian,  
ðonne sorg and slæp sōmod ætgædre  
earmne ānhagan oft gebindað: [40]  
þinceð him on mōde þæt hē his mōndryhten  
clyppe and cysse, and on cnēo lēcge  
hōnda and hēafod, swā hē hwīlum ær  
in gēardagum giefstōles brēac;  
ðonne onwæcneð eft winelēas guma, [45]  
gesihð him biforan fealwe wægās,  
baþian brimfluglas, brædan feþra,  
hrēosan hrīm and snāw hagle gemenged.  
Þonne bēoð þý hefigran heortan þenne,  
sāre æfter swæsne; sorg bið genīwad; [50]  
þonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð,  
grēteð glīwstafum, georne geondscēawað.  
Seċga geseldan swimmað eft on weg;  
flēotendra ferð<sup>5</sup> nō þær fela bringeð  
cūðra cwidegiedda; cearo<sup>6</sup> bið genīwad [55]  
þām þe seþdan sceal swīþe geneahhe  
ofer waþema gebind wērigne sefan.  
For þon ic geþencan ne mæg geond þās woruld  
for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce,  
þonne ic eorla lif eal geondþence, [60]  
hū hī færlīce flēt ofgēafon,  
mōdge maguþegnas. Swā þes middangeard  
ealra dōgra gehwām drēoseð and fealleþ;  
for þon ne mæg weorþan wīs wer, ær hē āge  
wintra dæl in woruldrīce. Wita sceal geþyldig, [65]  
ne sceal nō tō hātheort nē tō hrædwyrde,  
nē tō wāc wiga nē tō wanhýdig,  
nē tō forht nē tō fægen nē tō feohgīfre,  
nē næfre gielpes tō georn, ær hē geare cunne.  
Beorn sceal gebīdan, þonne hē bēot spriced, [70]  
oþ þæt collenferð cunne gearwe  
hwider hreþra gehygd hweorfan wille.  
Ongietan sceal glēaw hæle hū gæstlic bið,  
þonne eall þisse worulde wela wēste stōndeð,  
swā nū missenlice geond þisne middangeard [75]  
winde biwāune<sup>7</sup> weallas stōndaþ,  
hrīme bihrorene,<sup>8</sup> hryðge þā ederas.

Wōriað þā wīnsalo,<sup>9</sup> waldend licgað  
 drēame bidrorene<sup>10</sup>; duguð eal gecrōng  
 wlōnc bī wealle: sume wīg fornōm, [80]  
 fērede in forðwege; sumne fugel<sup>11</sup> oþbær  
 ofer hēanne holm; sumne sē hāra wulf  
 dēaðe gedælde; sumne drēorighlēor  
 in eorðscræfe eorl gehyðde:  
 yþde swā þisne eardgeard ælda Scyppend, [85]  
 oþ þæt burgwara breahntma lēase  
 eald ęnta geweorc idlu stōdon.  
 Sē þonne þisne wealsteal wīse geþōhte,  
 and þis deorce lif dēope geondþenceð,  
 frōd in ferðe<sup>12</sup> feor oft gemōn [90]  
 wælsleahta worn, and þās word ācwið:  
 ‘Hwær cwōm mearg? hwær cwōm mago<sup>13</sup>? hwær cwōm māþþumgyfa?  
 hwær cwōm symbla gesetu? hwær sindon sęledrēamas?  
 Ēalā beorht bune! ēalā byrnwiga!  
 ēalā þēodnes þrym! hū sēo þrāg gewāt, [95]  
 genāþ under nihthelm, swā hēo nō wære!  
 Stōndeð nū on lāste lēofre duguþe  
 weal wundrum hēah, wyrmlīcum fāh:  
 eorlas fornōmon asca þryþe,  
 wāpen wælgīfru, wyrd sēo mære; [100]  
 and þās stānhleoþu<sup>14</sup> stormas cnyssað;  
 hrīð hrēosende hrūsan bindeð,  
 wintres wōma, þonne wōn cymeð,  
 nīpeð nihtscūa, norþan onsendeð  
 hrēo hæglfare hæleþum on andan. [105]  
 Eall is earfoðlic eorþan rīce,  
 onwendeð wyrda gesceaft weoruld under heofonum:  
 hēr bið feoh læne, hēr bið frēond læne,  
 hēr bið mōn læne, hēr bið mæg læne;  
 eal þis eorþan gesteal idel weorþeð!’” [110]

EPILOGUE.

Swā cwæð snottor on mōde, gesæt him sundor æt rune.  
 Til biþ sē þe his trēowe gehealdeð; ne sceal næfre his torn tō rycene  
 beorn of his brēostum ācýþan, nemþe hē ær þā bōte cunne;  
 eorl mid ęlne gefrēmman. Wel bið þām þe him āre sēceð,  
 frōfre tō Fæder on heofonum, þær ūs eal sēo fæstnung stōndeð. [115]

7. The MS. reading is **hryre** (nominative), which is meaningless.

8. For **ūhtna gehwylce**, see note on **cēnra gehwylcum**, p. 140.

10. **þe ... him**. See § 75 (4). Cf. *Merchant of Venice*, II, v, 50-51.

27. For **mine** (MS. **in**), which does not satisfy metrical requirements, I adopt Kluge’s plausible substitution of **miltse**; **miltse witan** = *to show (know, feel), pity*. The **myne wisse** of *Beowulf* (l. 169) is metrically admissible.

37. The object of **wāt** is **þinceð him on mōde**; but the construction is unusual, inasmuch as both **þæt’s** (**þæt** pronominal before **wāt** and **þæt** conjunctive before **þinceð**) are omitted. See p. 112, ll. 18-19.

41. **þinceð him on mōde** (see note on **him ... þiōden**, p. 147). “No more sympathetic picture has been drawn by an Anglo-Saxon poet than where the wanderer in exile falls asleep at his oar and dreams again of his dead lord and the old hall and revelry and joy and gifts,—then wakes to look once more upon the waste of ocean, snow and hail falling all around him, and sea-birds dipping in the spray.” (Gummere, *Germanic Origins*, p. 221.)

53-55. **Sęcga ... cwidegiedda** = *But these comrades of warriors* [= those seen in vision] *again swim away* [= *fade away*]; *the ghost of these fleeting ones brings not there many familiar words*; i.e. he sees in dream and vision the old familiar faces, but no voice is heard: they bring neither greetings to him nor tidings of themselves.

65. **Wita sceal geþyldig**. Either **bēon (wesan)** is here to be understood after **sceal**, or **sceal** alone means *ought to be*. Neither construction is to be found in Alfredian prose, though the omission of a verb of motion after **sculan** is common in all periods of Old English. See note on **nō ... meahste**, p. 140.

75. **swā nū**. “The Old English lyrical feeling,” says Ten Brink, citing the lines that immediately follow **swā nū**, “is fond of the image of physical destruction”; but I do not think these lines have a merely figurative import. The reference is to a period of real devastation, antedating the Danish incursions. “We might fairly find such a time in that

parenthesis of bad government and of national tumult which filled the years between the death of Aldfrith in 705 and the renewed peace of Northumbria under Ceolwulf in the years that followed 729." (Brooke, *Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 355.)

93. **cwōm ... gesetu**. Ettmüller reads **cwōmon**; but see p. 107, note on **wæs ... þā igland**. The occurrence of **hwær cwōm** three times in the preceding line tends also to hold **cwōm** in the singular when its plural subject follows. Note the influence of a somewhat similar structural parallelism in *seas hides* of these lines (*Winter's Tale*, IV, iv, 500-502):

"Not for ... all the *sun sees* or  
The close *earth wombs* or the profound *seas hides*  
In unknown fathoms, will I break my oath."

111. **gesæt ... rūne**, *sat apart to himself in silent meditation*.

114. **eorl ... gefrēman**. Supply **sceal** after **eorl**.

- 1 = Metodes.
- 2 = earfoþa.
- 3 = sweotole.
- 4 = medu-.
- 5 = ferhð.
- 6 = cearu.
- 7 = See bewāwan.
- 8 = See behrēosan.
- 9 = wīnsalu.
- 10 = See bedrēosan.
- 11 = fuḡol.
- 12 = ferhðe.
- 13 = magu.
- 14 = -hliðu.

155

## I. GLOSSARY.

### OLD ENGLISH—MODERN ENGLISH.

[The order of words is strictly alphabetical, except that **ð** follows **t**. The combination **æ** follows **ad**.

Gender is indicated by the abbreviations, m. (= masculine), f. (= feminine), n. (= neuter). The usual abbreviations are employed for the cases, nom., gen., dat., acc., and instr. Other abbreviations are sing. (= singular), pl. (= plural), ind. (= indicative mood), sub. (= subjunctive mood), pres. (= present tense), pret. (= preterit tense), prep. (= preposition), adj. (= adjective), adv. (= adverb), part. (= participle), conj. (= conjunction), pron. (= pronoun), intrans. (= intransitive), trans. (= transitive).

Figures not preceded by § refer to page and line of the texts.

A B C D E F G H I K L  
M N O P R S T ð U W Y

#### A.

**ā**, *ever, always, aye*.

**abbudisse**, f., *abbess* [Lat. *abbatissa*].

**ābēodan** (§ 109), *bid, offer*;

**him hæł ābēad** 138, 9 = *bade him hail, wished him health*.

**ābrecan** (§ 120, Note 2), *break down, destroy*.

**ābūgan** (§ 109, Note 1), *give way, start* [bow away].

**ac**, conj., *but*.

**ācweðan** (§ 115), *say, speak*.

**ācýðan** (§ 126), *reveal, proclaim* [**cūð**].

**ād**, m., *funeral pile*.

**adesa**, m., *adze, hatchet*.

**ǣ** (**ǣw**), f., *law*.

**ǣdre** (**ēdre**), f., *stream, canal, vein*;

**blōd ēdrum dranc** 139, 4 = *drank blood in streams* (instr.).

**ǣfæstnis**, f., *piety*.

**ǣfen-ræst**, f., *evening rest*.

**ǣfen-spræc**, f., *evening speech*.

**ǣfest** (**ǣwfest**), *law-abiding, pious*.

**ǣfestnis**, see **ǣfæstnis**.

**ǣfre**, *ever, always*.

155b

**æfter**, prep. (§ 94, (1)), *after*;  
**æfter ðæm**, *after that, thereafter*;  
**æfter ðæm ðe**, conj., *after*.  
**æfter**, adv., *after, afterwards*.  
**æghwā** (§ 77, Note), *each, every*.  
**æghwilc** (§ 77, Note), *each, any*.  
**æglæca**, see **āglæca**.  
**ægðer** (**æghwæðer**, **āðer**) (§ 77, Note), *each, either*;  
**ægðer ... oðer ... oðer**, *either ... or ... or*;  
**ægðer ge ... ge** (§ 95, (2)), *both ... and*;  
**ægðer ge ... ge ... ge**, *both ... and ... and*.  
**æht**, f., *property, possession [**āgan**].  
**ælc** (§ 77), *each*.  
**ælde** (**ielde**) (§ 47), m. pl., *men*; gen. pl., **ælda**.  
**ælmih̄tig**, *almighty*.  
**æmetta**, m., *leisure* [*empti-ness*].  
**ænig** (§ 77), *any*;  
**ænige ðinga** 141, 22 = *for anything*.  
(See 140, 15, Note.)  
**ær**, adv., *before, formerly, sooner*;  
**nō þ̄ ær** 140, 1 = *none the sooner*;  
**æror**, comparative, *before, formerly*;  
**ærest**, superlative, *first*.  
**ær**, conj. (§ 105, 2), *ere, before* = **ær ðæm ðe**.  
**ær**, prep, with dat., *before* (time);  
**ær ðæm ðe**, conj. (§ 105, 2), *before*.  
**ærcebisceop**, m., *archbishop* [Lat. *archiepiscopus*].  
**ærendgewrit**, n., *message, letter*.  
**ærendwreca** (-raca), m., *messenger*.  
**ærest**, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *first*.  
**ærnan** (§ 127), *ride, gallop* [**iernan**].  
**ærra**, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *former*.  
**ærwela**, m., *ancient wealth*.  
**æsc**, m., *ash, spear*; gen. pl., **asca**.  
**Æscesdūn**, f., *Ashdown* (in Berkshire).  
**æstel**, m., *book-mark* [Lat. *hastula*].  
**æt** (§ 94, (1)), *at, in*;  
with **leornian**, *to learn*, **geðicgan**, *to receive*, and other verbs of similar import,  
**æt** = *from*: 115, 18; 137, 8, etc.  
**ætberan** (§ 114), *bear to, hand*.  
**ætgæd(e)re**, adv., *together*.  
**ætsteppan** (§ 116), *step up, advance*; pret. sing., **ætstōp**.  
**æðele**, *noble, excellent*.  
**æðeling**, m., *a noble, prince*.  
**Æðelwulfing**, m., *son of Ethelwulf*.  
**Æðered**, m., *Ethelred*.  
**āfeallan** (§ 117), *fall*.  
**āfierran** (§ 127), *remove* [**feor**].  
**āgan** (§ 136), *to own, possess*.  
**āgen**, adj.-part., *own*; dat. sing., **āgnum** [**āgan**].  
**āgiefan** (§ 115), *give back*.  
**āglæca** (**æglæca**), m., *monster, champion*.  
**āhton**, see **āgan**.  
**ālætan** (§ 117), *let go, leave*.  
**aldor**, see **ealdor**.  
**ālęcgan** (§ 125, Note), *lay down* [**licgan**]; past part., **ālęd**.  
**Āliesend**, m., *Redeemer* [**āliesan** = *release, ransom*].  
**ālimpan** (§ 110), *befall, occur*.  
**ālȳfan** (§ 126), *entrust, permit*.  
**ambor**, m., *measure*; gen. pl., **ambra** (§ 27, (4)).  
**ambyre**, *favorable*.  
**ān** (§ 89), *one*;  
**āna**, *alone, only*;  
**ānra gehwylcum** 141, 15 = *to each one*.  
(See 140, 15, Note.)  
**anda**, m., *zeal, injury, indignation*;  
**hæleðum on andan** 153, 6 = *harmful to men*.*

**andēfn**, f., *proportion, amount*.  
**andgiet** (-git), n., *sense, meaning*.  
**andgitfullice**, *intelligibly*;  
 -gitfullicost, *superlative*.  
**andswaru**, f., *answer*.  
**andwyrđan** (§ 127), *to answer*; pret., **andwyrde**.  
**Angel**, n., *Anglen* (in Denmark); dat. sing., **Angle** (§ 27 (4)).  
**Angelcynn**, n., *English kin, English people, England*.  
**ānhaga** (-hoga), m., *a solitary, wanderer* [ān + hogian, *to meditate*].  
**ānlīpig**, *single, individual*.  
**ānunga** (§ 93, (2)), *once for all* [ān].  
**apostol**, m., *apostle* [Gr. ἀπόστολος].  
**ār**, f., *honor, property, favor*;  
 āre gebīdeð 148, 3 = *waits for divine favor* (gen.).  
**ārāed**, adj., *inexorable*.  
**ārāedan** (§ 126), *read*.  
**ārēcc(e)an** (§ 128), *translate, expound*.  
**ārfæstnis**, f., *virtue*.  
**ārīsan** (§ 102), *arise*.  
**asca**, see **aesc**.  
**āsęcgan** (§ 132), *say, relate*.  
**āsęttan** (§ 127), *set, place*.  
**āsingan** (§ 110), *sing*.  
**āspędan** (§ 127), *spend, expend*.  
**āstigan** (§ 102), *ascend, arise*.  
**āstędan** (§ 116), *stand up*.  
**ātēah**, see **ātēon**.  
**atelic**, *horrible, dire*.  
**ātēon** (§ 118), *draw, draw away, take* (as a journey).  
**atol**, *horrible, dire*.  
**ättor**, n., *poison*.  
**ātuge**, see **ātēon**.  
**āð**, m., *oath*.  
**āðer**, see **ęgðer**.  
**āwęccan** (§ 128), *awake, arouse*; pret. sing., **āweahte**, **āwęhte**.  
**aweg**, *away*.  
**āwęndan** (§ 127), *turn, translate*.  
**āwritan** (§ 102), *write, compose*.  
**āwyrđan** (§ 128), *work, do, perform*.

157b

## B.

**Bāchsecg**, m., *Bagsac*.  
**bæcbord**, n., *larboard, left side of a ship*.  
**bæl**, n., *funeral fire, funeral pile*.  
**bān**, n., *bone*.  
**bān-fāg**, *adorned with bones or antlers*.  
**bān-loca**, m., *flesh* [bone-locker].  
**Basengas**, m. pl., *Basing* (in Hantshire).  
**be** (bī) (§ 94, (1)), *by, about, concerning, near, along, according to*;  
**be norðan þām wēstenne** (§ 94, (4)), *north of the waste (desert)*;  
**be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.  
**bēag**, see **būgan**.  
**bēag-hroden**, *ring-adorned*.  
**bēah** (bēag), m., *ring, bracelet, collar* [būgan].  
**bealo-nīð**, m., *dire hatred, poison, venom*.  
**bearn**, n., *child, son* [bairn].  
**bebēodan** (§ 109), *command, bid, entrust* (with dat.).  
**bebīo-**, see **bebēo-**.  
**bebohte**, see **bebycgan**.  
**bebycgan** (§ 128), *sell*.  
**bēc**, see **bōc**.  
**becuman** (§ 114), *come, arrive, befall*.  
**bedāelan** (§ 126), *separate, deprive*.  
**bedrēosan** (§ 109), *deprive*; past part. pl., **bedrorene** (**bidrorene**) [dross, dreary].  
**befāestan** (§ 127), *fasten, implant*.



**befēolan** (§ 110), *apply one's self*;  
**ðāra ðe ðā spēða hæbben ðæt hīe ðæm befēolan mægen 119, 20** = *of those who have the means by which they may apply themselves to it*.  
**beforan**, prep. with dat., *before*.  
**bēgen** (declined like **twēgen**, § 89), *both*.  
**begeondan** (**begiondan**), prep. with dat., *beyond*.  
**begietan** (§ 115), *get, obtain, find*.  
**beginnan** (§ 110), *begin*.  
**beheonan** (**behionan**), prep. with dat., *on this side of*.  
**behreōsan** (§ 109), *fall upon, cover*; past part. pl., **behrorene** (**bihrorene**).  
**belimpan** (§ 110), *pertain, belong*.  
**beniman** (§ 114), *take, derive*.  
**benn**, f., *wound* [**bana** = *murderer*].  
**bēon** (**bīon**) (§ 134), *be, consist*.  
**beorh** (**beorg, biorh**), m., *mound* [barrow].  
**beorht**, *bright, glorious*.  
**Beormas**, m. pl., *Permians*.  
**beorn**, m., *man, hero, chief*.  
**bēor-þegu**, f., *beer-drinking* [**þicgan** = *receive*].  
**bēot**, n., *boast*.  
**beran** (§ 114), *bear*.  
**berēafian** (§ 130), *bereave*;  
**since berēafod 145, 22** = *bereft of treasure*.  
**beren**, adj., *of a bear, bear*.  
**berstan** (§ 110), *burst, crack*.  
**besmiðian** (§ 130), *make hard* (as at the forge of a smith).  
**beþ**, see **wel** (§ 97, (2)).  
**bētan** (§ 126), *make good, requite*; past part. pl., **gebētte**.  
**beþera** (**beþra**), see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).  
**betlic**, *excellent*.  
**beþsta**, see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).  
**betuh** (**betux**) (§ 94, (1)), *between*.  
**betwēonan** (§ 94, (1)), *between*.  
**betȳnan** (§ 126), *close, end* [**tūn** = *enclosure*].  
**bewāwan** (§ 117), *blow upon*; past part. pl., **bewāune** (**biwāune, bewāwene**).  
**bewrēon** (§ 118, 1), *enwrap*; pret. 3d sing., **bewrāh** (**biwrāh**).  
**bī**, see **be**.  
**bi-**, see **be-**.  
**bīdan** (§ 102), *bide, await, expect, endure* (with gen.).  
**biddan** (§ 115, Note 2), *bid, pray, request* (§ 65, Note 3);  
**bæd hine blīðne 136, 7** = *bade him be blithe*.  
**bindan** (§ 110), *bind*.  
**bīo**, see **bēo** (imperative sing.).  
**bisceop** (**biscep**), m., *bishop* [Lat. *episcopus*].  
**bisceop-stōl**, m., *episcopal seat, bishopric*.  
**bisigu**, f., *business, occupation*; dat. pl., **bisgum**.  
**bītan** (§ 102), *bite, cut*.  
**biwrāh**, see **bewrēon**.  
**blæd**, m., *glory, prosperity* [**blāwan** = *blow, inflate*].  
**Blēcinga-ēg**, f., *Blekingen*.  
**bliss**, f., *bliss* [**blīðe**].  
**blīðe**, *blithe, happy*.  
**blōd**, n., *blood*.  
**bōc** (§ 68, (1), Note 1), f., *book*.  
**bōcere**, m., *scribe* [**bōc**].  
**bōna** (**bana**), m., *murderer* [**bane**].  
**bōt**, f., *boot, remedy, help, compensation*.  
**brād** (§ 96, (1)), *broad*.  
**brædan** (§ 126), *extend, spread* [**brād**].  
**brædra**, see **brād**.  
**brægd**, see **bregdan**.  
**brēac**, see **brūcan**.  
**breahm**, m., *noise, revelry*;  
**burgwara breahma lēase 152, 10** = *bereft of the revelries of citizens*.  
**bregdan** (§ 110), *brandish, draw* [braid]; pret. ind. 3d sing., **brægd**.

**brenting**, m., *high ship*.  
**brēost**, n., *breast* (the pl. has the same meaning as the sing.).  
**brēost-cofa**, m., *breast-chamber, heart, mind*.  
**brēost-gehygd**, n., *breast-thought, thought of the heart, emotion*.  
**brim**, n., *sea, ocean*.  
**brimfugol**, m., *sea-fowl*.  
**bringan** (§ 128), *bring*.  
**brōhte, brōhton**, see **bringan**.  
**brōðor (brōður)** (§ 68, (2)), m., *brother*.  
**brūcan** (§ 109, Note 1), *use, enjoy* (§ 62, Note 1; but Alfred frequently employs the acc. with **brūcan**).  
**brycg**, f., *bridge*.  
**brýcð**, see **brūcan**.  
**brytta**, m., *distributor, dispenser* [**brēotan** = *break in pieces*].  
**būan** (§ 126, Note 2),  *dwell, cultivate* [bower].  
**būde**, see **būan**.  
**bufan**, prep. with dat. and acc., *above*.  
**būgan** (§ 109, Note 1), *bow, bend, turn*.  
**bune**, f., *cup*.  
**burg (burh)** (§ 68, (1), Note), f., *city, borough*; dat. sing., **byrig**.  
**Burgenda**, m. gen. pl., *of the Burgundians*;  
**Burgenda land**, *Bornholm*.  
**burgware** (§ 47), m. pl., *burghers, citizens*.  
**burh**, see **burg**.  
**būtan (būton)**, prep. (§ 94, (1)), *without, except, except for, but*.  
**būtan (būton)**, conj., *except that, unless*.  
**būtū**, *both* (= *both—two*).  
 The word is compounded of the combined neuters of **bēgen** and **twēgen**, but is m. and f. as well as n.).  
**bȳn** (§ 126, Note 2), *cultivated*.  
**byrde**, adj., *of high rank, aristocratic*.  
**byrig**, see **burg**.  
**byrne**, f., *byrnie, corselet, coat of mail*.  
**byrnwiga**, m., *byrnie-warrior, mailed soldier*.  
**byrð**, see **beran**.

159b

### C.

**canōn**, m., *sacred canon, Bible* [Lat. canon, Gr. κανών].  
**cearu (cearo)**, f., *care*.  
**ceaster-būend**, m., *castle-dweller*.  
**cēne**, *keen, bold, brave*.  
**cēosan** (§ 109), *choose, accept, encounter*.  
**cild**, n., *child*.  
**cirice**, f., *church*; nom. pl., **ciricean**.  
**cirr (cierr)**, m., *turn, time, occasion* [char, chore, ajar = on char, on the turn].  
**cirran** (§ 127), *turn*.  
**clæne**, *clean, pure*.  
**clæne**, adv., *entirely* ["clean out of the way," Shaks.].  
**clūdig**, *rocky* [having boulders or masses like *clouds*].  
**clyppan** (§ 127), *embrace, accept* [clip = clasp for letters, papers, etc.].  
**cnapa**, m., *boy* [knave].  
**cnēo (cnēow)**, n., *knee*; acc. pl., **cnēo**.  
**cniht**, m., *knight, warrior*.  
**cnyssan** (§ 125), *beat*.  
**collenferð (-ferhð)**, *proud-minded, fierce*.  
**costnung**, f., *temptation*.  
**Crēcas (Crēacas)**, m. pl., *Greeks*.  
**cringan** (§ 110), *cringe, fall*.  
**Crīst**, m., *Christ*.  
**Crīsten**, *Christian*; nom. pl. m., **Crīstene, Crīstne**.  
**cuma**, m., *new-comer, stranger*.  
**cuman** (§ 114), *come*. (See p. 138, Note on ll. 2-6.)  
**cunnan** (§ 137), *know, can, understand*.  
**cunnian** (§ 130), *make trial of, experience* [**cunnan**].  
**cure**, see **cēosan**.  
**cūð**, *well-known, familiar* [past part. of **cunnan**: cf. uncouth].

160

**cūðe, cūðen, cūðon**, see **cunnan**.  
**cwæden, cwædon**, see **cweðan**.  
**cwalu**, f., *death, murder* [**cwelan**].  
**cwealm-cuma**, m., *murderous comer*.  
**cwelan** (§ 114), *die* [to quail].  
**cwēn**, f., *queen*.  
**Cwēnas**, m. pl., *a Finnish tribe*.  
**cweðan** (§ 115), *say, speak* [quoth, bequeath].  
**cwic**, *living, alive* [quicksilver; the quick and the dead].  
**cwidegiedd**, n., *word, utterance* [**cweðan** and **gieddian**, both meaning *to speak*].  
**cwīðan** (§ 126), *bewail* (trans.).  
**cwōm**, see **cuman**.  
**cyle** (**ciele**), m., *cold* [chill];  
**cyle gewyrca** 110, 7 = *produce cold, freeze*.  
**cyme**, m., *coming* [**cuman**].  
**cyn(n)**, n., *kin, race*.  
**cyn(n)**, adj. (used only in pl.), *fitting things, etiquette, proprieties, courtesies*;  
**cynna gemyndig** 136, 3 = *mindful of courtesies*.  
**cynerice**, n., *kingdom*.  
**cyning**, m., *king*.  
**cyssan** (§ 125), *kiss*.  
**cyst**, f., *the choice, the pick, the best* [**cēosan**].  
**cȳðan** (§ 126), *make known, display*, [**cūð**];  
 2d sing. imperative, **cȳð**.

## D.

**dæd**, f., *deed*.  
**dæg**, m., *day*.  
**dæg-hwīl**, f., *day-while, day*;  
**hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde eorðan wynne** 145, 2 = *he had spent his days of earth's joy*.  
**dæg-rīm**, n., **number of days** [day-rime];  
**dōgera daeg-rīm** 143, 7 = *the number of his days*.  
**dæl**, n., *dale*.  
**dæ̅l**, m., *part, deal, division*.  
**dēad**, *dead*.  
**dēað**, m., *death*.  
**dēman** (§ 126), *deem, judge*.  
**Denamearc**, see **Denemearc**.  
**Dene** (§ 47), m. pl., *Danes*.  
**Denemearc** (**Denemearce**), f., *Denmark*; dat. sing., **Denemearce** (strong), **Denemearcan** (weak).  
**Denisc**, *Danish*;  
**ðā Deniscan**, *the Danes*.  
**dēofol**, m., n., *devil*; gen. sing., **dēofles** (§ 27, (4)).  
**dēope**, *deeply, profoundly* [**dēop**].  
**dēor**, n., *wild animal* [deer].  
**deorc**, *dark, gloomy*.  
**dōgor**, n., *day*; gen. pl., **dōgora, dōgera, dōgra**.  
**dōgor-gerīm**, n., *number of days, lifetime*.  
**dōm**, m., *doom, judgment, glory*.  
**dōmgeorn**, adj., *eager for glory* [*doom-yearning*].  
**dōn** (§ 135), *do, cause, place, promote, remove*.  
**dorste, dorston**, see **durran**.  
**drēam**, m., *joy, mirth* [dream].  
**drēogan** (§ 109), *endure, enjoy, spend* [Scotch dree].  
**drēorig**, *dreary, sad*.  
**drēorighlēor**, adj., *with sad face* [**hlēor** = *cheek, face, leer*].  
**drēosan** (§ 109), *fall, perish* [dross].  
**drīfan** (§ 102), *drive*.  
**drihten**, see **dryhten**.  
**drincan** (§ 110), *drink*.  
**drohtoð** (-að), m., *mode of living, occupation* [**drēogan**].  
**drugon**, see **drēogan**.  
**dryhten** (**drihten**), m., *lord, Lord*; dat. sing., **dryhtne**.  
**dryht-sele**, m., *lordly hall*.  
**duguð**, f., *warrior-band, host, retainers* [**doughtiness**].

In **duguð** and **geogoð**, the higher (older) and lower (younger) ranks are represented, the distinction corresponding roughly to the mediæval distinction between knights and squires.

**durran** (§ 137), *dare*.

**duru**, f., *door*.

**dyde**, see **dōn**.

**dynnan** (§ 125), **resound** [din].

**dýre** (**diere**, **dēore**, **dīore**), *dear, costly*.

## E.

**ēa**, f., *river*; gen. sing., **ēas**; dat. and acc. sing., **ēa**.

**ēac**, *also, likewise* [a nickname = an eek-name. See § 65, Note 2];

**ēac swilce** (**swelce**) 112, 3 = *also*.

**ēaca**, m., *addition* [**ēac**];

**tō ēacan** = *in addition to* (§ 94, (4)).

**ēage**, n., *eye*.

**eahta**, *eight*.

**ēalā**, *oh! alas!*

**ealað**, see **ealu**.

**eald** (§ 96, (2)), *old*.

**ealdor** (**aldor**), n., *life*;

**gif ðū ðæt ęllenweorc aldre gedigest** 138, 17 = *if thou survivest that feat with thy life* (instr.).

**ealdor-dæg** (**aldor-**, **ealder-**), m., *day of life*.

**ealdor-gedāl** (**aldor-**), n., *death* [life-deal].

**ealdormōn**, m., *alderman, chief, magistrate*.

**ealgian**, (§ 130), *protect, defend*.

**eall** (**eal**), *all*;

**ealne weg**, *all the way* (§ 98, (1));

**ealneg** (< **ealne weg**), *always*;

**ealles** (§ 98, (3)), *adv., altogether, entirely*.

**Eall** (**eal**) is frequently used with partitive gen. = *all of*: 143, 19; 145, 3.

**ealu** (**ealo**) (§ 68), n., *ale*; gen. sing., **ealað**.

**ealu-scerwen**, f., *mortal panic* [ale-spilling].

**eard**, m., *country, home* [**eorðe**].

**eardgeard**, m. *earth* [earth-yard].

**eardian** (§ 130),  *dwell* [**eard**].

**eardstapa**, m., *wanderer* [earth-stepper].

**ēare**, n., *ear*.

**earfoð** (**earfeð**), n. *hardship, toil*; gen. pl., **earfeða**.

**earfoðlic**, adj., *full of hardship, arduous*.

**earm**, m., *arm*.

**earm**, adj., *poor, wretched*.

**earmcearig**, *wretched, miserable*.

**earmlīc**, *wretched, miserable*.

**earnung**, f., *merit* [earning].

**ēast**, *east*.

**ēastan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the east*.

**Ēast-Dene** (§ 47), *East-Danes*.

**ēasteward**, *eastward*.

**ēastrihte** (**ēastryhte**) (§ 93, (6)), *eastward*.

**Ēastron**, pl., *Easter*.

**ēaðe**, *easily*.

**ēaðmōdlice**, *humbly*.

**eaxl**, f., *shoulder* [axle].

**Ebrēisc**, adj., *Hebrew*.

**ēce**, *eternal, everlasting*.

**ęcg**, f., *sword* [edge].

**edor**, m., *enclosure, dwelling*; nom. pl., **ederas**.

**ēdrum**, see **ędre**.

**efne**, *adv., just, only* [evenly].

**eft**, *adv., again, afterwards* [aft].

**ęgesa**, m., *fear, terror* [awe].

**ęllen**, n., *strength, courage*;

**mid ęlne** = *boldly*;

**on ęlne** 147, 17 = *mightily, suddenly, or in their (earls') strength (prime)*.

**ęllen-męrðu**, f. *fame for strength, feat of strength*.

**ęllen-weorc**, n., *feat of strength*.

**ellenwōdnis**, f., *zeal, fervor*.  
**ellor-gāst**, m., *inhuman monster* [alien ghost].  
**ēln**, f., *ell* [el-bow].  
**ēlne**, see **ellen**.  
**ēlra**, adj. comparative, *another* [\***ēle** cognate with Lat. *alius*];  
**on ēlran mēn** 139, 14 = *in another man*.  
**emnlong (-lang)**, *equally long*;  
**on emnlange** = *along* (§ 94, (4)).  
**ēnde**, m., *end*.  
**ēndebyrdnes**, f., *order*.  
**ēnde-dæg**, m., *end-day, day of death*.  
**ēnde-lāf**, f., *last remnant* [end-leaving].  
**ēngel**, m., *angel* [Lat. *angelus*].  
**Englafeld** (§ 51), m., *Englefield* (in Berkshire).  
**Engle** (§ 47), m. pl., *Angles*.  
**Englisc**, adj., *English*;  
**on Englisc** 117, 18 and 19 = *in English, into English*.  
**Engliscgereord**, n., *English language*.  
**ēnt**, m., *giant*.  
**ēode**, see **gān**.  
**eodorcan** (§ 130), *ruminate*.  
**eorl**, m., *earl, warrior, chieftain*.  
**eorlic**, *earl-like, noble*.  
**eorð-draca**, m., **dragon** [earth-drake].  
**eorðe**, f., *earth*.  
**eorð-reċed**, n., *earth-hall*.  
**eorðscræf**, n., *earth-cave, grave*.  
**eoten**, m., *giant, monster*.  
**ēow**, see **ðū**.  
**Ēowland**, n., *Öland* (an island in the Baltic Sea).  
**ērian** (§ 125), *plow* [to ear].  
**Estland**, n., *land of the Estas* (on the eastern coast of the Baltic Sea).  
**Estmēre**, m., *Frische Haff*.  
**Estum**, dat. pl., *the Estas*.  
**etan** (§ 115), *eat* [ort].  
**ettan** (§ 127), *graze* [etan].  
**ēðel**, m., *territory, native land* [allodial].  
**ēðel-weard**, m., *guardian of his country*.

## F.

**fæc**, n., *interval, space*.  
**fæder** (§ 68, (2)), m., *father*.  
**fægen**, *fain, glad, exultant*.  
**fæger (fæger)**, *fair, beautiful*.  
**fælsian** (§ 130), *cleanse*.  
**færlīce**, *suddenly* [fǣr = *fear*].  
**fæst**, *fast, held fast*.  
**fæste**, adv., *fast, firmly*.  
**fæstnung**, f., *security, safety*.  
**fæt**, n., *vessel* [wine-fat, vat].  
**fætels**, m., *vessel*; acc. pl., **fætels**.  
**fæðm**, m., *embrace, bosom* [fathom = the space *embraced* by the extended arms].  
**fāg (fāh)**, *hostile*;  
**hē wæs fāg wið God** 142, 18 = *he was hostile to God*.  
**fāh (fāg)**, *variegated, ornamented*.  
**Falster**, *Falster* (island in the Baltic Sea).  
**fandian** (§ 130), *try, investigate* [findan].  
**faran** (§ 116), *go* [fare].  
**feallan** (§ 117), *fall, flow*.  
**fealu**, *fallow, pale, dark*; nom. pl. m., **fealwe**.  
**fēawe (fēa, fēawa)**, pl., *few*.  
**fela** (indeclinable), *much, many* (with gen.).  
**feld** (§ 51), m., *field*.  
**fell (fel)**, n., *fell, skin, hide*.  
**fēng**, see **fōn**.

**fēn-hlið**, n., *fēn-slope*.  
**fēn-hop**, n., *fēn-retreat*.  
**feoh**, n., *cattle, property* [fee]; gen. and dat. sing., **fēos**, **fēo**.  
**feohgīfre**, *greedy of property, avaricious*.  
**feohtan** (§ 110), *fight*.  
**fēol**, see **feallan**.  
**fēond** (§ 68, (3)), m., *enemy, fiend*.  
**fēond-grāp**, f., *fiend-grip*.  
**feor** (§ 96, (4)), adj., *far, far from* (with dat.).  
**feor**, adv., *far, far back* (time).  
**feorh**, m., n., *life*.  
**feorh-bēnn**, f., *life-wound, mortal wound*.  
**feorh-lēgu**, f., *laying down of life*. (See p. 146, Note on l. 13.)  
**feorh-sēoc**, *life-sick, mortally wounded*.  
**feorm** (**fiorm**), f., *use, benefit (food, provisions)* [farm].  
**feormian** (§ 130), *eat, devour*.  
**feorran**, *from afar*.  
**fēowertig**, *forty*; gen., **fēowertiges** (§ 91, Note 1).  
**ferhð** (**ferð**), m., *heart, mind, spirit*.  
**ferian** (§ 125), *carry, transport* [to ferry];  
**ferede in forðwege** 152, 5 = *carried away*.  
**fers**, n., *verse* [Lat. versus].  
**fersc**, *fresh*.  
**ferðloca** (**ferhð-**), m., *heart, mind, spirit* [heart-locker].  
**fēt**, see **fōt**.  
**fetor**, f., *fetter* [fōt]; instr. pl., **feterum**.  
**feðer**, f., *feather*; acc. pl., **feðra**.  
**fierd**, f., *English army* [faran].  
**fif**, *five*.  
**fiftiene**, *fifteen*.  
**fiftig**, *fifty*; gen. sing., **fiftiges** (§ 91, Note 1); dat. pl., **fiftegum** (§ 91, Note 3).  
**findan** (§ 110), *find*.  
**finger**, m., *finger*.  
**Finnas**, m. pl., *Fins*.  
**fiorm**, see **feorm**.  
**firas**, m. pl., *men* [feorh]; gen. pl., **fira**; dat. pl., **firum**.  
**firrest** (**fierrest**), see **feor** (§ 96, (4)).  
**first**, m., *time, period*.  
**fiscað** (**fiscnað**), m., *fishing*.  
**fiscere**, m., *fisherman*.  
**fiscnað**, see **fiscað**.  
**flēon** (§ 118, II.), *flee*.  
**flēotan** (§ 109), *float*.  
**flēt**, n., *floor of the hall*.  
**flōd**, m., *flood, wave*.  
**folc**, n., *folk, people*.  
**folc-cwēn**, f., *folk-queen*.  
**folc-cyning**, m., *folk-king*.  
**folcgefoht**, n., *folk-fight, battle, general engagement*.  
**fold-bold**, n., *earth-building, hall*.  
**folde**, f., *earth, land, country* [feld].  
**folm**, f., *hand* [fēlan = feel].  
**fōn** (§ 118), *seize, capture, take* [fang];  
**tō rice fōn** = *come to (ascend) the throne*.  
**for** (§ 94, (1)), *for, on account of*;  
**for ðæm** (**ðe**), **for ðon** (**ðe**), *because*;  
**for ðon**, **for ðy**, **for ðæm** (**for-ðām**), *therefore*.  
**fōr**, see **faran**.  
**forbærnan** (§ 127), *burn thoroughly* [for is intensive, like Lat. per].  
**forgiefan** (**-gifan**) (§ 115), *give, grant*.  
**forhęrgian** (§ 130), *harry, lay waste*.  
**forhogdnis**, f., *contempt*.  
**forht**, *fearful, afraid*.  
**forhwęga**, *about, at least*.  
**forlętan** (§ 117), *abandon, leave*.

**forlēt, forlēton**, see **forlāetan**.

**forma**, *first*;

**forman siðe**, *the first time* (instr.).

**forniman** (§ 114), *take off, destroy*.

**forspēndan** (§ 127), *spend, squander*.

**forstōndan** (-standan) (§ 116), *understand*.

**forswāpan** (§ 117), *sweep away*; pret. 3d sing. indic., **forswēop**.

**forswērian** (§ 116), *forswear* (with dat.); past part., **forsworen**.

**forð**, *forth, forward*.

**forðolian** (§ 130), *miss, go without* (with dat.) [not to *thole* or experience].

**forðweg**, m., *way forth*;

**in forðwege**, *away*.

**fōt** (§ 68, (1)), m. *foot*.

**Frāena**, m., *Frene*.

**frætwe**, f. pl., *fretted armor, jewels* [fret].

**fram**, see **frōm**.

**frēa**, m., *lord, Lord*.

**frēa-drihten**, m., *lord, master*.

**frēfran** (§ 130), *console, cheer* [**frōfor**].

**frēmdē**, *strange, foreign*;

**ðā frēmdan**, *the strangers*.

**frēmman** (§ 125), *accomplish, perform, support* [to frame].

**frēmsumnes** (-nis), f., *kindness, benefit*.

**frēo** (frīo), *free*; gen. pl., **frēora** (frīora).

**frēodōm**, m., *freedom*.

**frēolic**, *noble* [free-like].

**frēomæg**, m., *free kinsman*.

**frēond** (§ 68, (3)), m., *friend*.

**frēondlēas**, *friendless*.

**frēondlice**, *in a friendly manner*.

**frēorig**, *cold, chill* [**frēoran**].

**frīora**, see **frēo**.

**frīð**, m., n., *peace, security* [bel-fry].

**frōd**, *old, sage, prudent*.

**frōfor**, f., *comfort, consolation, alleviation*;

**fyrena frōfre** 137, 7 = *as an alleviation of outrages* (dat.).

**frōm** (fram) (§ 94, (1)), *from, by*.

**frōm**, adv., *away, forth*.

**fruma**, m., *origin, beginning* [**frōm**].

**frumsceaft**, f., *creation*.

**fugela**, see **fugol**.

**fugelere**, m., *fowler*.

**fugol** (fugel), m., *fowl, bird*; gen. pl., **fugela**.

**ful**, n., *cup, beaker*.

**fūl**, *foul*.

**fūlian** (§ 130), *grow foul, decompose*.

**full** (ful), adj., *full* (with gen.);

**be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.

**full** (ful) adv., *fully, very*.

**fultum**, m., *help*.

**furðor** (furður), adv., *further*.

**furðum**, adv., *even*.

**fylð**, see **feallan**.

**fyren** (firen), f., *crime, violence, outrage*.

**fyrhtu**, f., *fright, terror*; dat. sing., **fyrhtu**.

**fyrst**, adj., superlative, *first, chief*.

**fýsan** (§ 126), *make ready, prepare* [**fūs** = ready];

**gūðe gefýsed** 137, 9 = *ready for battle*.

## G.

**gād**, n., *lack*.

**gæst**, see **gāst**.

**gafol**, n., *tax, tribute*.

**galan** (§ 116), *sing* [nightingale].

**gālnes**, f., *lust, impurity*.

**gān** (§ 134), *go*.  
**gār**, m., *spear* [gore, gar-fish].  
**gār-wiga**, m., *spear-warrior*.  
**gāst** (**gæst**), m., *spirit, ghost*.  
**gāstlic** (**gæstlic**), *ghastly, terrible*.  
**ge**, *and*; see **ægðer**.  
**gē**, *ye*; see **ðū**.  
**geador**, *together*.  
**geāmetigian** (§ 130), *disengage from* (with acc. of person and gen. of thing) [empty].  
**geærnan** (§ 127), *gain by running* [**iernan**].  
**gēap**, *spacious*.  
**gēar**, n., *year*; gen. pl., **gēara**, is used adverbially = *of yore, formerly*.  
**gēardæg**, m., *day of yore*.  
**geare** (**gearn**, **gearwe**), *readily, well, clearly* [yarely].  
**Gēat**, m., *a Geat, the Geat* (i.e. Beowulf).  
**Gēatas**, m. pl., *the Geats* (a people of South Sweden).  
**Gēat-mecgas**, m. pl., *Geat men* (= the fourteen who accompanied Beowulf to Heorot).  
**gebēorscipe**, m., *banquet, entertainment*.  
**gebētan** (§ 126), *make amends for* [**bōt**].  
**gebīdan** (§ 102), *wait, bide one's time* (intrans.); *endure, experience* (trans., with acc.).  
**gebind**, n., *commingling*.  
**gebindan** (§ 110), *bind*.  
**gebrēowan** (§ 109), *brew*.  
**gebrowen**, see **gebrēowan**.  
**gebūd**, **gebūn**, see **būan** (§ 126, Note 2).  
**gebyrd**, n., *rank, social distinction*.  
**gecēosan** (§ 109), *choose, decide*.  
**gecnāwan** (§ 117), *know, understand*.  
**gecoren**, see **gecēosan**.  
**gecringan** (§ 110), *fall, die* [cringe].  
**gedælan** (§ 126), *deal out, give*;  
**dēaðe gedælde** 152, 7 = *apportioned to death* (dat.), or, *tore (?) in death* (instr.).  
**gedafenian** (§ 130), *become, befit, suit* (impersonal, usually with dat., but with acc. 112, 10).  
**gedigan** (§ 126), *endure, survive*.  
**gedōn** (§ 135), *do, cause, effect*.  
**gedræg**, n., *company*.  
**gedrēosan** (§ 109), *fall, fail*.  
**gedriht** (**gedryht**), n., *band, troop*.  
**gedrogen**, see **drēogan**.  
**gedrync**, n., *drinking*.  
**geendian** (§ 130), *end, finish*.  
**gefaran** (§ 116), *go, die*.  
**gefēa**, m., **joy**.  
**gefēaht**, see **gefēohtan**.  
**gefēh**, see **gefēon**.  
**gefēng**, see **gefōn**.  
**gefēoht**, n., *fight, battle*.  
**gefēohtan** (§ 110), *fight*.  
**gefēon** (§ 118, v.), *rejoice at* (with dat.); pret. 3d sing., **gefēah**, **gefēh**.  
**gefēra**, m., *companion, comrade* [co-farer].  
**geflieman** (§ 126), *put to flight* [**flēon**].  
**gefōhten**, see **gefēohtan**.  
**gefōn** (§ 118, vii.), *seize*.  
**gefōr**, see **gefaran**.  
**gefræge**, n., *hearsay, report*;  
**mīne gefræge** (instr.) 141, 7 = *as I have heard say, according to my information*.  
**gefremman** (§ 125), *perform, accomplish, effect*.  
**gefultumian** (§ 130), *help* [**fultum**].  
**gefylce**, n., *troop, division* [**folc**]; dat. pl., **gefylcum**, **gefylcium**.  
**gefillan** (§ 127), *fill* (with gen.); past part. pl., f., **gefylða**.  
**geglengan** (§ 127), *adorn*.  
**gehātland**, n., *promised land* [**gehātan** = *to promise*].  
**gehealdan** (§ 117), *hold, maintain*.  
**gehieran** (**gehýran**) (§ 126), *hear*.  
**gehiersumnes**, f., *obedience*.



**gehola**, m., *protector* [**helan**].

**gehwā** (§ 77, Note), *each*;

on **healfa gehwone** 142, 7 (see Note 140, 15. Observe that the pron. may, as here, be masc. and the gen. fem.).

**gehwæðer** (§ 77, Note), *each, either, both*.

**gehwylc** (**gehwilc**) (§ 77, Note), *each* (with gen. pl. See Note 140, 15).

**gehwyrfan** (§ 127), *convert, change*.

**gehȳdan** (§ 126), *hide, conceal, consign*.

**gehygd**, f., n., *thought, purpose*.

**gehȳran**, see **gehieran**.

**gehȳrnes**, f., *hearing*;

**eal ðā hē in gehȳrnesse geleornian meahte** 115, 14 = *all things that he could learn by hearing*.

**gelædan** (§ 126), *lead*.

**gelæred**, part.-adj., *learned*; superlative, **gelæredest**.

**gelafian** (§ 130), *lave*.

**gelenge**, *along of, belonging to* (with dat.).

**geleornian** (**-liornian**) (§ 130), *learn*.

**gelice**, *likewise; in like manner to* (with dat.).

**geliefan** (**gelȳfan**) (§ 126), *believe*;

**ðæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelȳfde** 137, 6 = *that she believed in any earl*.

**gelimpan** (§ 110), *happen, be fulfilled*.

**gelimplic**, *proper, fitting*.

**gelȳfan**, see **geliefan**.

**gelȳfed**, *weak, infirm* [left (hand)].

**gēnde**, see **gīeman**.

**gemet**, n., *meter, measure, ability*.

**gemētan** (§ 126), *meet*.

**gemon**, see **gemunan**.

**gemunan** (§ 136), *remember*; indic. pres. 1st and 3d sing., **gemon**; pret. sing., **gemunde**.

**gemynd**, n., *memory, memorial*;

**tō gemyndum** 147, 5 = *as a memorial*.

**gemyndgian** (**-mynian**) (§ 130), *remember*;

**mid hine gemyndgade** 115, 15 = *he treasured in his memory*;

**gemyne mærdō** 138, 15 = *be mindful of glory* (imperative 2d sing.).

**gemyndig**, *mindful of* (with gen.).

**genāp**, see **genīpan**.

**geneahhe**, *enough, often*;

**genehost**, superlative, *very often*.

**genip**, n., *mist, darkness*.

**genīpan** (§ 102), *grow dark*.

**genīwian** (§ 130), *renew*.

**genōh**, *enough*.

**genumen**, see **niman**.

**geoc**, n., *yoke*.

**gēocor**, *dire, sad*.

**geogoð**, f., *youth, young people, young warriors*. (See **duguð**.)

**geond** (**giond**) (§ 94, (2)), *throughout* [yond].

**geondhweorfan** (§ 110), *pass over, traverse, recall*;

**ðonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð** 150, 15 = *then his mind recalls the memory of kinsmen*.

**geondscēawian** (§ 130), *survey, review*;

**georne geondscēawað** 150, 16 = *eagerly surveys them*.

**geondðenc(e)an** (§ 128), *think over, consider*.

**geong** (§ 96, (2)), *young*;

**giengest**, (**gingest**), superlative, *youngest, latest, last*.

**geong** = **gong**, see **gongan** (imperative 2d sing.).

**gēong** (**gīong**), see **gongan** (pret. 3d sing.).

**georn** (**giorn**), *eager, desirous, zealous, sure* [yearn].

**georne**, *eagerly, certainly*;

**wiste ðē geornor** 143, 5 = *knew the more certainly*.

**geornfulnes**, f., *eagerness, zeal*.

**geornlice**, *eagerly, attentively*.

**geornor**, see **georne**.

**gerēcednes**, f., *narration* [**rēccan**].

**gerisenlic**, *suitable, becoming*.

**gerȳman** (§ 126), *extend*, (trans.) [**rūm**].

**gesæliglic**, *happy, blessed* [silly].

**gesamnode**, see **gesomnian**.  
**gesceaft**, f., *creature, creation, destiny* [**scieppan**].  
**gesceap**, n., *shape, creation, destiny* [**scieppan**].  
**gescieldan** (§ 127), *shield, defend*.  
**gesealde**, see **gesellan**.  
**geseglian** (§ 130), *sail*.  
**geselda**, m., *comrade*.  
**gesellan** (§ 128), *give*.  
**gesēon** (**gesion**) (§ 118), see, **observe**; pres. indic. 3d sing., **gesihð**.  
**geset**, n., *habitation, seat*.  
**gesettan** (§ 127), *set, place, establish*.  
**gesewen**, see **sēon**, **gesēon** (past part.).  
**gesewenlic**, *seen, visible* [seen-like].  
**gesiglan** (§ 127), *sail*.  
**gesihð**, see **gesēon**.  
**gesittan** (§ 115, Note 2), *sit* (trans., as *to sit a horse, to sit a boat, etc.*); *sit, sit down* (intrans.).  
**geslægen**, see **slēan** (§ 118).  
**gesomnian** (§ 130), *assemble, collect*.  
**gesomnung**, f., *collection, assembly*.  
**gestāh**, see **gestigan**.  
**gestaðelian** (§ 130), *establish, restore* [**standan**].  
**gesteal**, n., *establishment, foundation* [stall].  
**gestigan** (§ 102), *ascend, go* [stile, stirrup, sty (= a *rising* on the eye)].  
**gestrangian** (§ 130), *strengthen*.  
**gestrēon**, n., *property*.  
**gestrynan** (§ 126), *obtain, acquire* [**gestrēon**].  
**gesweorcan** (§ 110), *grow dark, become sad*;  
For **ðon ic geðencan ne mæg geond ðās woruld for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce 151, 3-4**  
= *Therefore in this world I may not understand wherefore my mind does not grow "black as night."*  
(Brooke.)  
**geswīcan** (§ 102), *cease, cease from* (with gen.).  
**getæl**, n., *something told, narrative*.  
**getruma**, m., *troop, division*.  
**geðanc**, m., n., *thought*.  
**geðeah**, see **geðicgan**.  
**geðenc(e)an** (§ 128), *think, remember, understand, consider*.  
**geðeodan** (§ 126), *join*.  
**geðeode** (-**ðiode**), n., *language, tribe*.  
**geðeodnis**, f., *association*;  
but in 112, 2 this word is used to render the Lat. *appetitus* = *desire*.  
**geðicg(e)an** (§ 115, Note 2), *take, receive*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **geðeah**.  
**geðungen**, part.-adj., *distinguished, excellent* [**ðeōn**, *to thrive*].  
**geðyldig**, *patient* [**ðolian**].  
**geweald** (**gewald**), n., *control, possession, power* [wield].  
**geweorc**, n., *work, labor*.  
**geweorðian** (§ 130), *honor* [to attribute *worth* to].  
**gewīcian** (§ 130),  *dwell*.  
**gewin(n)**, n., *strife, struggle*.  
**gewindan** (§ 110), *flee* [wend].  
**gewissian** (§ 130), *guide, direct*.  
**gewītan** (§ 102), *go, depart*.  
**geworht**, see **gewyrcan**.  
**gewrit**, n., *writing, Scripture*.  
**gewunian** (§ 130), *be accustomed, be wont*.  
**gewyrc(e)an** (§ 128), *work, create, make, produce*.  
**gid(d)**, n., *word, speech*.  
**giefan** (§ 115), *give*.  
**giefstōl**, m., *gift-stool, throne*.  
**giefu** (**gifu**), f., *gift*.  
**gielp** (**gilp**), m., n., *boast* [yelp].  
**gīeman** (**gēman**) (§ 126), *endeavor, strive*.  
**gīet** (**gīt, gýt**), *yet, still*.  
**gif** (**gyf**), *if* [not related to *give*].  
**gifeðe** (**gyfeðe**), *given, granted*.  
**gilp**, see **gielp**.

**gīlp-cwide**, m., *boasting speech* [*yelp*-speech].  
**gingest**, see **geong** (adj.).  
**gīohðo (gehðu)**, f., *care, sorrow, grief*.  
**giū (iū)**, *formerly, of old*.  
**glæd (glæd)**, *glad*.  
**glēaw**, *wise, prudent*.  
**glīwstæf**, m., *glee, joy*; instr. pl. (used adverbially), **glīwstafum** 150, 16 = *joyfully*.  
**God**, m., *God*.  
**gōd** (§ 96, (3)), *good*;  
    **mid his gōdum** 115, 12 = *with his possessions (goods)*.  
**godcund**, *divine* [**God**].  
**godcundlice**, *divinely*.  
**gold**, n., *gold*.  
**gold-æht**, f., *gold treasure*.  
**gold-fāh**, *gold-adorned*.  
**gold-hroden**, part.-adj., *gold-adorned*.  
**goldwine**, m., *prince, giver of gold, lord* [gold-friend].  
**gomel (gomol)**, *old, old man*.  
**gongan (gangan)** (§ 117), *go* [gang]; imperative 2d sing., **geong**; pret. sing., **gēong, gīong, gēng**;  
    past part., **gegongen, gegangen**.  
    The most commonly used pret. is **ēode**, which belongs to **gān** (§ 134).  
**Gotland**, n., *Jutland* (in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*), *Gothland* (in *Wulfstan's Voyage*).  
**gram**, *grim, angry, fierce, the angry one*.  
**grāp**, f., *grasp, clutch, claw*.  
**grētan** (§ 126), *greet, attack, touch*.  
**grōwan** (§ 117, (2)), *grow*.  
**gryre-lēoð**, n., *terrible song* [grisly lay].  
**guma**, m., *man, hero* [groom; see § 65, Note 1].  
**gūð**, f., *war, battle*.  
**gūð-bill**, n., *sword* [war-bill].  
**gūð-gewæde**, n., *armor* [war-weeds].  
**gūð-hrēð**, f., *war-fame*.  
**gūð-wine**, m., *sword* [war-friend].  
**gyddian** (§ 130), *speak formally, chant* [giddy; the original meaning of *giddy* was *mirthful*, as when one sings].  
**gyf**, see **gif**.  
**gyfeðe**, see **gifeðe**.  
**gyldan (gieldan)** (§ 110), *pay*; indic. 3d sing., **gylt**.  
**gylden**, *golden* [**gold**].

170

## H.

**habban** (§ 133), *have*.  
**hād**, m., *order, rank, office, degree* [-hood, -head].  
**hæfta**, m., *captive*.  
**hægel (hagol)**, m., *hail*; instr. sing., **hagle**.  
**hæglfaru**, f., *hail-storm* [hail-faring].  
**hæle**, see **hæleð**.  
**hæl**, f., *hail, health, good luck*.  
**hæleð (hæle)**, m., *hero, warrior*.  
**hæt**, see **hātan**.  
**hæðen**, *heathen*.  
**Hæðum (æt Hæðum)**, *Haddeby* (= *Schleswig*).  
**hāl**, *hale, whole*.  
**hālettan** (§ 127), *greet, salute* [to hail].  
**Halfðene**, *Halfdane* (proper name).  
**hālga**, m., *saint*.  
**Hālgoland**, *Halgoland* (in ancient Norway).  
**hālig**, *holy*.  
**hālignes**, f., *holiness*.  
**hām**, m., *home*; dat. sing., **hāme, hām** (p. 104, Note);  
    used adverbially in **hām ēode** 112, 18 = *went home*.  
**hand**, see **hond**.  
**hār**, *hoary, gray*.  
**hāt**, *hot*.  
**hātan** (§ 117, Note 2), *call, name, command*; pret. sing., **heht, hēt**.

170b

**hātheort**, *hot-hearted*.  
**hätte**, see **hātan**.  
**hē, hēo, hit** (§ 53), *he, she, it*.  
**hēafod**, n., *head*.  
**hēah** (§ 96, (2)), *high*; acc. sing, m., **hēanne**.  
**hēah-sele**, m., *high hall*.  
**hēahðungen**, *highly prosperous, aristocratic* [**hēah** + past part. of **ðeon** (§ 118)].  
**healdan** (§ 117), *hold, govern, possess*;  
144, 9 = *hold up, sustain*.  
**healf**, adj., *half*.  
**healf**, f., *half, side, shore*.  
**heall**, f., *hall*.  
**heals**, m., *neck*.  
**hēan**, *abject, miserable*.  
**hēanne**, see **hēah**.  
**heard**, *hard*.  
**heard-hicgende**, *brave-minded* [hard-thinking].  
**hearm-scaða**, m., *harmful foe* [harm-scather].  
**hearpe**, f., *harp*.  
**heaðo-dēor**, *battle-brave*.  
**heaðo-mære**, *famous in battle*.  
**heaðo-wylm**, m., *flame-surge, surging of fire* [battle-welling].  
**hēawan** (§ 117), *hew, cut*.  
**hebban, hōf, hōfon, gehafen** (§ 117), *heave, lift, raise*.  
**hefig**, *heavy, oppressive*.  
**heht**, see **hātan**.  
**helan** (§ 114), *conceal*.  
**heλλ**, f., *hell*.  
**helm**, m., *helmet*.  
**Helmingas**, m. pl., *Helmings* (Wealtheow, Hrothgar's queen, is a Helming).  
**help**, f., *help*.  
**helpan** (§ 110), *help* (with dat.).  
**heofon**, m., *heaven*.  
**heofonlic**, *heavenly*.  
**heofonrice**, n., *kingdom of heaven*.  
**hēold**, see **healdan**.  
**heolstor (-ster)**, n., *darkness, concealment, cover* [holster].  
**heora (hiera)**, see **hē**.  
**heord**, f., *care, guardianship* [hoard].  
**heoro-drēorig**, *bloody* [sword-dreary].  
**Heorot**, *Heorot, Hart* (the famous hall which Hrothgar built).  
**heorte**, f., *heart*.  
**hēr**, *here, hither*;  
in the *Chronicle* the meaning frequently is *at this date, in this year*: 99, 1.  
**heře**, m., *Danish army*.  
**heřenis**, f., *praise*.  
**hergan** (§ 130), *raid, harry, ravage* [**heře**].  
**hergung**, f., *harrying, plundering*.  
**herian (heřigean)** (§ 125), *praise*.  
**hērsumedon**, see **hīersumian**.  
**hēt**, see **hātan**.  
**hider (hieder)**, *hither*.  
**hiera**, see **hē**.  
**hīeran (hýran)** (§ 126), *hear, belong*.  
**hierde**, m., *shepherd, instigator* [keeper of a herd].  
**hierdebōc**, f., *pastoral treatise* [shepherd-book, a translation of Lat. *Cura Pastoralis*].  
**hīerra**, see **hēah**.  
**hīersumian (hýr-, hēr-)** (§ 130), *obey* (with dat.).  
**hige (hyge)**, m., *mind, heart*.  
**hige-ðihtig**, *bold-hearted*.  
**hild**, f., *battle*.  
**hilde-dēor**, *battle-brave*.  
**hilde-mecg**, m., *warrior*.  
**hilde-sæd**, *battle-sated*.  
**hin-fūs**, *eager to be gone* [hence-ready].

**hira**, see **hē**.

**hlāw** (**hlāw**), m., *mound, burial mound* [Ludlow and other place-names, *low* meaning *hill*].

**hlāford**, m., *lord, master* [loaf-ward?].

**hleahator**, m., *laughter*.

**hlēo**, m., *refuge, protector* [lee].

**hlifian** (§ 130), *rise, tower*.

**hlyn**, m., *din, noise*.

**hlynsian** (§ 130), *resound*.

**hof**, n., *court, abode*.

**hogode**, see **hycgan**.

**holm**, m., *sea, ocean*.

**hond** (**hand**), f., *hand*;

on **gehwæðre hond**, *on both sides*.

**hord**, m., n., *hoard, treasure*.

**hordcofa**, m., *breast, heart* [hoard-chamber]

**hors**, n., *horse*.

**horshwæl**, m., *walrus*.

**hrædwyrde**, *hasty of speech* [**hræd** = *quick*].

**hrægel**, n., *garment*; dat. sing., **hrægle**.

**hrān**, m., *reindeer*.

**hraðe**, *quickly, soon* [rath-er].

**hrēo** (**hrēoh**), *rough, cruel, sad*.

**hrēosan** (§ 109), *fall*.

**hrēran** (§ 126), *stir*.

**hreðer**, m., n., *breast, purpose*; dat. sing., **hreðre**.

**hrīm**, m., *rime, hoarfrost*.

**hrīmceald**, *rime-cold*.

**hring**, m., *ring, ring-mail*.

**hrīð**, f. (?), *snow-storm*.

**hrōf**, m., *roof*.

**Hrones næss**, literally *Whale's Ness, whale's promontory*;  
see **næss**.

**hrūse**, f., *earth* [**hrēosan**: deposit].

**hryre**, m., *fall, death* [**hrēosan**].

**hrýðer**, n., *cattle* [rinder-pest].

**hryðig**, *ruined* (?), *storm-beaten*; nom. pl. m., **hryðge**.

**hū**, *how*.

**Humbre**, f., *river Humber*.

**hund**, *hundred*.

**hunig**, n., *honey*.

**hunta**, m., *hunter*.

**huntoð** (-tað), m., *hunting*.

**hūru**, adv., *about*.

**hūs**, n., *house*.

**hwā**, **hwæt** (§ 74), *who? what?* **swā hwæt swā** (§ 77, Note), *whatsoever*;  
indefinite, *any one, anything*;  
for **hwan** (instr.), *wherefore*.

**hwæl**, m., *whale*.

**hwælhunta**, m., *whale-hunter*.

**hwælhuntað**, m., *whale-fishing*.

**hwær**, *where?* **hwær ... swā**, *wheresoever*;  
**wel hwær**, *nearly everywhere*.

**hwæthwugu**, *something*.

**hwæðer**, *whether, which of two?*

**hwæðre**, *however, nevertheless*.

**hwēne**, see **hwōn**.

**hweorfan** (§ 110), *turn, go*.

**hwider**, *whither*.

**hwil**, f., *while, time*;

**ealle ðā hwile ðe**, *all the while that*;

**hwilum** (instr. pl.), *sometimes*.

**hwilc** (**hwylc**, **hwelc**) (§ 74, Note 1), *which? what?*

**hwōn**, n., *a trifle*;

**hwēne** (instr. sing.), *somewhat, a little*.

**hwōnan**, *when*.

**hȳ**, see **hīe**.

**hycgan** (§ 132), *think, resolve*; pret. 3d sing., **hogode**.

**hȳd**, f., *hide, skin*.

**hyge**, see **hige**.

**hyra** (**hiera**), see **hē**.

**hȳran**, see **hieran**.

**hyrde**, see **hierde**.

**hys** (**his**), see **hē**.

**hyt** (**hit**), see **hē**.

## I.

**ic** (§ 72), *I*.

**īdel**, *idle, useless, desolate*.

**ides**, f., *woman, lady*.

**ieldra**, adj., see **eald**.

**ieldra**, m., *an elder, parent, ancestor*.

**iernan** (**yrnan**) (§ 112), *run*.

**īglōnd** (**īgland**), n., *island*.

**ilca** (**ylca**), *the same* [of that ilk].

**Ilfing**, *the Elbing*.

**in**, *in, into* (with dat. and acc.);

**in on**, *in on, to, toward*.

**inbryrdnis** (**-nes**), f., *inspiration, ardor*.

**indryhten**, *very noble*.

**ingong**, m., *entrance*.

**innan**, adv., *within, inside*;

**on innan**, *within*.

**innanbordes**, adv.-gen., *within borders, at home*.

**inne**, adv., *within, inside*.

**intinga**, m., *cause, sake*.

**inweardlice**, *inwardly, fervently*.

**inwid-sorg** (**inwit-sorh**), f., *sorrow caused by an enemy*.

**inwit-ðanc**, m., *hostile intent*.

**Īraland**, n., *Ireland* (but in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*, *Iceland* is probably meant).

**īren**, n., *iron, sword*; gen. pl., **īrenna**, **īrena**.

**īren-bend**, m., f., *iron-band*.

**īu**, see **giu**.

173

## K.

**kynerīce**, see **cynerīce**.

**kyning**, see **cyning**.

**kyrtel**, m., *kirtle, coat*.

## L.

**Læden**, *Latin*.

**Lædengeðēode** (**-ðīode**), n., *Latin language*.

**Lædenware** (§ 47), m. pl., *Latin people, Romans*.

**læfan** (§ 126), *leave*.

**læge**, see **licgan**.

**Læland**, n., *Laaland* (in Denmark).

**læn**, n., *loan*;

**tō læne** 121, 2 = *as a loan*.

**læne**, adj., *as a loan, transitory, perishable*.

**læran** (§ 126), *teach, advise, exhort* [**lār**].

**læssa**, **læsta**, see **lytel**.

**læstan** (§ 127), *last, hold out* (intrans.); *perform, achieve* (trans.).

**lætan** (§ 117), *let, leave*.

**lāf**, f., *something left, remnant, heirloom* (often a sword);

**tō lāfe**, *as a remnant, remaining*.

**lagulād**, f., *sea* [lake-way, **lād** = *leading, direction, way*].

**land**, see **lōnd**.

**lang**, see **lōng**.

**Langaland**, n., *Langeland* (in Denmark).

**lār**, f., *lore, teaching*.

**lārcwide**, m., *precept, instruction*, [**cwide** < **cweðan**].

**lārēow**, m., *teacher* [**lār** + **ðēow**].

173b

**lāst**, m., *track, footprint* [shoemaker's last];  
**on lāst(e)**, *in the track of, behind* (with dat.).  
**lāð**, *loathsome, hateful*.  
**lēas**, *loose, free from, bereft of* (with gen.).  
**lēasung**, f., *leasing, deception, falsehood*.  
**lēcgan** (§ 125, Note), *lay*.  
**lēfdon**, see **liefan**.  
**leger**, n., *lying in, illness* [**licgan**].  
**lēng**, see **lēnge**.  
**lēngra**, see **lēng**.  
**lēod**, m., *prince, chief*.  
**lēod**, f., *people, nation* (the plural has the same meaning).  
**lēod-scipe**, m., *nation* [people-ship].  
**lēof**, *dear* [lief].  
**leoht**, adj., *light*.  
**lēoht**, n., *light, brightness*.  
**leornere**, m., *learner, disciple*.  
**leornian** (§ 130), *learn*.  
**leornung** (**liornung**), f., *learning*.  
**lēoð**, n., *song* [lay?].  
**lēoðcræft**, m., *poetic skill* [lay-craft].  
**lēoðsong**, n., *song, poem*.  
**lēt**, see **lætan**.  
**libban** (§ 133), *live*; pres. part., **lifigende**, *living, alive*.  
**lic**, n., *body, corpse* [lich-gate, Lichfield].  
**licgan** (§ 115, Note 2), *lie, extend, flow, lie dead*;  
3d sing. indic. pres., **ligeð**, **lið**.  
**lichama** (**-hōma**), m., *body* [body-covering].  
**lician** (§ 130), *please* (with dat.) [like].  
**lic-sār**, n., *body-sore, wound in the body*.  
**liefan** (**lēfan**) (§ 126), *permit, allow* (with dat.) [grant *leave to*].  
**lif**, n., *life*.  
**lif-dagas**, m. pl., *life-days*.  
**lifigende**, see **libban**.  
**lig**, m., *flame, fire*.  
**ligeð**, see **licgan**.  
**lim**, n., *limb*.  
**list**, f., *cunning*; dat. pl., **listum**, is used adverbially = *cunningly*.  
**lið**, see **licgan**.  
**lof**, m., *praise, glory*.  
**lond** (**land**), n., *land, country*.  
**lēng** (**lang**) (§ 96, (2)), *long*.  
**lēnge** (**lange**) (§ 97, (2)), *long*;  
**lēnge on dæg**, *late in the day*.  
**lufan**, see **lufu**.  
**lufian** (**lufigean**) (§ 131), *love*.  
**luflice**, *lovingly*.  
**lufu**, f., *love*; dat. sing. (weak), **lufan**.  
**lungre**, *quickly*.  
**lust**, m., *joy* [lust];  
**on lust**, *joyfully*.  
**lyt**, indeclinable, *little, few* (with partitive gen.).  
**lytel** (**litel**) (§ 96, (2)), *little, small*.

## M.

**mā**, see **micle** (§ 97, (2)).  
**mæg**, see **magan**.  
**mæg**, m., *kinsman*; nom. pl., **māgas** (§ 27, (2)).  
**mægen** n., *strength, power* [might and *main*].  
**mægen-ellen**, n., *main strength, mighty courage*.  
**mægð**, f., *tribe*.  
**mægðhād**, m., *maidenhood, virginity*.  
**mæl-gesceaft**, f., *appointed time* [**mæl** = *meal, time*].  
**mæran** (§ 126), *make famous, honor*.  
**mære**, *famous, glorious, notorious*.

**mæ̅rðo** (**mæ̅rðo**, **mæ̅rð**), f., *glory, fame*.  
**mæsseprēost**, m., *mass-priest*.  
**mæst**, see **micel**.  
**magan** (§ 137), *be able, may*.  
**māgas**, see **mæg**.  
**magu** (**magō**), m., *son, man*.  
**maguðegn**, m., *vassal, retainer*.  
**man(n)**, see **mōn(n)**.  
**mancus**, m., *mancus, half-crown*; gen. pl., **mancessa**.  
**māndæd**, f., *evil deed*.  
**manig**, see **mōnig**.  
**manigfeald**, see **mōnigfeald**.  
**māra**, see **micel**.  
**maðelian** (§ 130), *harangue, speak*.  
**māðum** (**māððum**), m., *gift, treasure, jewel*; gen. pl., **māðma**.  
**māððumgyfa**, m., *treasure-giver, lord*.  
**māððum-wela**, m., *wealth of treasure*.  
**mē**, see **ic**.  
**meaht**, f., *might, power*.  
**meahte**, see **magan**.  
**mearc**, f., *boundary, limit* [mark, march].  
**mearg** (**mearh**), m., *horse*; nom. pl., **mēaras**.  
**mearð**, m., *marten*.  
**mec**, see **ic**.  
**medmicel**, *moderately large, short, brief*.  
**medu** (**medo**), m., *mead*.  
**medu-bēnc**, f., *mead-bench*.  
**medu-ful**, n., *mead-cup*.  
**medu-heall**, f., *mead-hall*.  
**mēn**, see **mōn(n)**.  
**męgan** (§ 127), *mingle, mix*.  
**męnigu** (**męnigeo**), f., *multitude* [many].  
**męnniscnes**, f., *humanity, incarnation* [man].  
**meolc**, f., *milk*.  
**Mēore**, *Möre* (in Sweden).  
**męre**, m., *lake, mere, sea* [mermaid].  
**Meretūn**, m., *Merton* (in Surrey).  
**mētan** (§ 126), *meet, find*.  
**Metod** (**Meotod**, **Metud**), m., *Creator, God*.  
**metod-sceaft**, f., *appointed doom, eternity*.  
**micel** (§ 96, (3)), *great, mighty, strong, large* [mickle];  
**māra**, *more, stronger, larger*.  
**micle** (**micele**), *greatly, much*.  
**miclum**, (§ 93, (4)), *greatly*.  
**mid**, *with, amid, among* (with dat. and acc.).  
**middangeard**, m., *earth, world* [middle-yard].  
**middeweard**, *midward, toward the middle*.  
**Mierce**, m. pl., *Mercians*.  
**mihte**, see **magan**.  
**mīl**, f., *mile* [Lat. mille].  
**mildheortnes**, f., *mild-heartedness, mercy*.  
**milts**, f., *mildness, mercy*.  
**mīn** (§ 76), *my, mine*.  
**mislic**, *various*.  
**missenlic**, *various*.  
**mōd**, n., *mood, mind, courage*.  
**mōdcearig**, *sorrowful of mind*.  
**mōdega**, **mōdga**, see **mōdig**.  
**mōdgedanc**, m., *purpose of mind*.  
**mōdig**, *moody, brave, proud*.  
**mōdor**, f., *mother*.  
**mōdsefa**, m., *mind, heart*.  
**mōn(n)** (**man**, **mann**) (§ 68; § 70, Note), m., *man, one, person, they*.  
**mōna**, m., *moon*.  
**mōnað** (§ 68, (1), Note), m., *month* [**mōna**]; dat. sing., **mōnðe**.



**mōn(n)cynn**, n., *mankind*.  
**mōndryhten**, m., *liege lord*.  
**mōnian (manian)** (§ 130), *admonish*.  
**mōnig (manig, mōneg, mænig)**, *many*.  
**mōnigfeald (manig-)**, *manifold, various*.  
**mōnðe**, see **mōnað**.  
**mōr**, m., *moor*.  
**morgen**, m., *morning*; dat. sing., **morgen(n)e**.  
**morðor-bealu (-bealo)**, n., *murder* [murder-bale];  
 see **ðurfan**.  
**mōste**, see **mōtan**.  
**mōtan** (§ 137), *may, be permitted, must*.  
**mund-gripe**, m., *hand-grip*.  
**munuc**, m., *monk* [Lat. monachus].  
**munuchād**, m., *monkhood, monastic rank*.  
**mūð**, m., *mouth*.  
**myntan** (§ 127), *be minded, intend*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **mynte**.  
**mynster**, n., *monastery* [Lat. monasterium]; dat. sing., **mynstre**.  
**mýre**, f., *mare* [**mearh**].  
**myrð**, f., *joy, mirth*;  
**mōdes myrðe** 142, 17 = *with joy of heart*.

176

## N.

**nā (nō)**, *not* [**ne ā** = *n-ever*];  
**nā ne**, *not, not at all*.  
**nabban** (p. 32, Note), *not to have*.  
**nædre**, f., *serpent, adder*.  
**næfde**, see **nabban**.  
**næfre**, *never*.  
**nænig** (§ 77), *no one, no, none*.  
**nære, næren, næron**, see § 40, Note 2.  
**næs** = **ne wæs**, see § 40, Note 2.  
**næss**, m., *ness, headland*.  
**nāht**, see **nōht**.  
**nālæs (nāles)**, *not at all* [**nā ealles**].  
**nam**, see **niman**.  
**nama**, see **noma**.  
**nāmon**, see **niman**.  
**nān**, *not one, no, none* [**ne ān**].  
**nānwuht**, n., *nothing* [no whit].  
**ne**, *not*.  
**nē**, *nor*;  
**nē ... nē**, *neither ... nor*.  
**nēah** (§ 96, (4)), *near*.  
**nēah**, adv., *nigh, near, nearly, almost*; comparative, **nēar**, *nearer*.  
**neaht**, see **niht**.  
**nēalēcan (-lācan)** (§ 126), *draw near to, approach* (with dat.).  
**nēar**, see **nēah**, adv.  
**nēat**, n., *neat, cattle*.  
**neṃnan** (§ 127), *name*.  
**nemðe, (nymðe)**, *except, unless*.  
**neṃrian** (§ 125), *save, preserve*.  
**nēten**, see **nieten**.  
**niedbeðearf**, *needful, necessary*.  
**nīehst**, see **nēah** (§ 96, (4)).  
**nīeten (nēten)**, n., *neat, beast, cattle*.  
**nigontiene**, *nineteen*.  
**niht (neaht)** (§ 68, (1), Note), *night*.  
**nihthelm**, m., *night-helm, shade of night*.  
**nihtscūa**, m., *shadow of night*.  
**niht-weorc**, n., *night-work*.  
**niman** (§ 114), *take, gain* [nimble, numb].  
**nīpan** (§ 102), *grow dark, darken*.  
**nis**, see § 40, Note 2.  
**nīð**, m., *malice, violence*.

176b

nīwe, *new, novel, startling.*

nō, see nā.

nōht (nāht, nā-wiht), n., *not a whit, naught, nothing; not, not at all.*

nōhwæðer (nāhwæðer), *neither;*

nōhwæðer nē ... ne ... nē ... ne 118, 8 = *neither ... nor.*

nolde, noldon = ne wolde, ne woldon, see willan.

noma (nama), m., *name.*

norð (§ 97, (1)), *north, in the north, northwards.*

norðan (§ 93, (5)), *from the north;*

be norðan, see § 94, (4).

Norð-Dene, m. pl., *North-Danes.*

norðeward, *northward.*

Norðhymbre, m. pl., *Northumbrians.*

Norðmanna, see Norðmōn.

Norðmēn, see Norðmōn.

norðmest, see norð.

Norðmōn (-man) (§ 68, (1)), *Norwegian.*

norðor, see norð.

norðryhte, *northward.*

norðward, *northward.*

Norðweg, *Norway.*

nose, f., *cape, naze* [ness, nose].

notu, f., *office, employment.*

nū, *now; now that, seeing that;*

nū ðā 138, 13 = *now then.*

nȳhst (nīehst), see nēah.

nymðe, see nemðe.

nysse, see nytan.

nyste, see nytan.

nyt(t), *useful, profitable.*

nytan (nitan < ne witan, § 136), *not to know;*

3d sing. pret., nysse, nyste.

## O.

of (§ 94, (1)), *of, from, concerning.*

ofer (§ 94, (2)), *over, across, after, in spite of* (see 144, 14);

ofer eorðan 142, 9 = *on earth.*

ofer, adv., *over, across.*

oferfēran (§ 126), *go over, traverse.*

oferfrēosan (§ 109), *freeze over.*

oferfroren, see oferfrēosan.

ofgiefan (§ 115), *give up, relinquish.*

ofost, f., *haste.*

ofslægen, see ofslēan.

ofslēan (§ 118), *slay off, slay.*

ofslōge, see ofslēan.

oft, *oft, often;* superlative, oftost.

on (§ 94, (3)), *in, into, on, against, to, among, during;*

on fif oððe syx 109, 6 = *into five or six parts;*

on weg 140, 10 = *away;*

on innan 144, 5 = *within;*

on unriht 145, 15 = *falsely.*

onbærnan (§ 126), *kindle, inspire.*

oncȳðð, f., *distress, suffering.*

ond (and), *and.*

ondsaca, m., *adversary.*

ondswarian (§ 130), *answer.*

ondward, adj., *present.*

onfēng, see onfōn.

onfeohtan (§ 110), *fight.*

onfindan (§ 110), *find out, discover;* pret. indic. 3d sing., onfunde.

onfōn (§ 118), *receive, seize violently.*

onfunde, see onfindan.

ongēan, prep., *against, towards* (with dat. and acc.).

ongēan, adv., *just across, opposite.*

Ōngelcynn (Angel-), n., *Angle kin, English people, England.*

**Ōngelðēod** (Angel-), f., *the English people or nation*.  
**ongemang** (-mōng), *among* (with dat.).  
**ongietan** (-gitan) (§ 115), *perceive, see, understand*.  
**onginnan** (§ 110), *begin, attempt*.  
**onlūtan** (§ 109), *bow, incline* (intrans.) [lout = a stooper].  
**onrīdan** (§ 102), *ride against, make a raid on*.  
**onsendan** (§ 127), *send*.  
**onslāpan** (onslēpan) (§ 126), *fall asleep, sleep*.  
**onspōnnan** (§ 117), *loosen* [unspan]; pret. 3d sing. indic., **onspēon**.  
**onspringan** (§ 110), *spring apart, unspring*.  
**onstāl**, m., *institution, supply*.  
**onstellan** (§ 128), *establish*; pret. 3d sing. indic., **onstealde**.  
**onwæcnan** (§ 127), *awake* (intrans.).  
**onweald** (-wald), m., *power, authority* [wield].  
**onwēndan** (§ 127), *change, overturn* [to wind].  
**ōr**, n., *beginning*.  
**oð** (§ 94, (2)), *until, as far as* (of time and place);  
**oð ðæt, oð ðe**, *until*.  
**oðberan** (§ 114), *bear away*.  
**oðder**, *other, second*;  
**oðder ... oðder**, *the one ... the other*.  
**oðfæstan** (§ 127), *set to* (a task).  
**oðfeallan** (§ 117) *fall off, decline*.  
**oððe**, *or*;  
**oððe ... oððe**, *either ... or*.

## P.

**plega**, m., *play, festivity*.  
**port**, m., *port* [Lat. portus].

## R.

**rād**, f., *raid*.  
**rācan** (§ 126), *reach*; pret. 3d sing., **rāhte**.  
**ræst**, see **reṣt**.  
**Rēadingas**, m. pl., *Reading* (in Berkshire).  
**reccan** (§ 128), *narrate, tell*; pret. pl. indic., **rehton, reahton**.  
**reccelēas**, *reckless, careless*.  
**reced**, n., *house, hall*.  
**regnian** (rēnian) (§ 130), *adorn, prepare*; past part., **geregnad**.  
**regollic** (-lec), *according to rule, regular*.  
**rēn-weard**, m., *mighty warden, guard, champion*.  
**reṣt** (ræst), f., *rest, resting-place, bed*.  
**rēðe**, *fierce, furious*.  
**rīce**, *rich, powerful, aristocratic*.  
**rīce**, n., *realm, kingdom* [bishopric].  
**rīcsian** (§ 130), *rule*.  
**rīdan** (§ 102), *ride*.  
**rīman** (§ 126), *count* [rime].  
**rīnc**, m., *man, warrior*.  
**rōd**, f., *rood, cross*;  
**rōde tācen**, *sign of the cross*.  
**Rōmware**, m. pl., *Romans*.  
**rōnd** (rand), m., *shield*.  
**rūn**, f., *rune, secret meditation* [to round = to whisper].  
**rycene** (ricene), *quickly, rashly*.  
**ryhtnorðanwind**, m., *straight north-wind*.

## S.

**sāe**, f., *sea*.  
**sāe-bāt**, m., *sea-boat*.  
**sāed**, n., *seed*.  
**sāede**, see **seccgan**.  
**sāel**, m., f., *time, happiness* [sil-ly];  
**on sāelum** 137, 22 = *joyous, merry*.  
**sāelan** (§ 126), *bind*.

**sāe-liðend** (§ 68, (3)), m., *seafarer* (nom. and acc. pl. same as nom. and acc. sing.).

**sam ... sam**, *whether ... or*.

**same**, *similarly*;

**swā same**, *just the same, in like manner*.

**samod**, see **sōmod**.

**sanct**, m., f., *saint* [Lat. *sanctus*]; gen. sing., **sanctæ**, f., **sancti**, m.

**sang**, see **sōng**.

**sār**, f., n., *sore, pain, wound*.

**sār**, adj., *sore, grievous*.

**sāre**, *sorely*.

**sāwan** (§ 117,) *sow*.

**sāwol**, f., *soul*; oblique cases, sing., **sāwle** (§ 39, Note).

**scacan** (**sceacan**) (§ 116), *shake, go, depart*; past part., **scacen**, **sceacen**.

**scadu-helm**, m., *cover of night, shadow-covering* [shadow-helm];

**scadu-helma gesceapu**, see [Note on 138, 2-6](#).

**sceal**, see **sculan**.

**scēap**, n., *sheep*.

**scēat**, m., *corner, region, quarter* [sheet];

**eorðan scēatta** 139, 14 = *in the regions of earth* (gen. used as locative).

**scēawi(g)an** (§ 130), *view, see* [shew].

**scēawung**, f., *seeing*.

**sceolde**, see **sculan**.

**scēop** (**scōp**), see **scieppan**.

**scēowyrhta**, m., *shoe-maker*.

**scēððan** (§ 116), *injure, scathe* (with dat.).

**scieppan** (§ 116), *create*.

**Scieppend**, m., *Creator*.

**scīnan** (§ 102), *shine*.

**scip** (**scyp**), n., *ship*.

**scipen**, n., *stall*.

**sciprāp**, m., *ship-rope, cable*.

**scīr**, f., *shire, district*.

**Sciringeshēal**, m., *Sciringesheal* (in Norway).

**scolde**, see **sculan**.

**scōmu**, f., *shame, dishonor*.

**Scōnēg**, f., *Skaane* (southern district of the Scandinavian peninsula).

**scopgereord**, n., *poetic language*.

**scriðan** (§ 102), *stride, stalk*.

**sculan** (§ 136; § 137, Note 2), *shall, have to, ought*.

**Scyldingas**, m. pl., *Scyldings, Danes*.

**scyp**, see **scip**.

**Scyppend**, see **Scieppend**.

**sē, sēo, ðæt** (§ 28; § 28, Note 3), *the; that; he, she, it; who, which, that*;

**ðæs**, *from then, afterwards, therefore*;

**ðæs ðe** (p. 110, l. 2), *with what*;

**ðȳ ... ðæt** (p. 110, ll. 7-8), *for this reason ... because*;

**tō ðæm ... swā**, *to such an extent ... as*;

**ðy** (**ðē**), *the* (adverbial, with comparatives);

**ðȳ ... ðȳ**, *the ... the*.

**seah**, see **sēon**.

**sealde**, see **sellan**.

**searo-gimm**, m., *artistic gem, jewel*.

**searo-nið**, m., *cunning hatred, plot*.

**searo-ðonc**, m., *cunning thought, device*.

**Seaxe**, m. pl., *Saxons, Saxony*.

**sēc(e)an** (§ 128), *to seek, visit, meet*.

**sęcg**, m., *man, warrior*.

**sęcgan** (§ 132), *say, tell*.

**sefa**, m., *mind, spirit*.

**sēfte**, *more easily* (comparative of **sōfte**).

**segel**, m., n., *sail*; dat. sing. = **segle**.

**seglian** (§ 130), *sail*.

**sęle**, m., *hall*.

**sęledrēam**, m., *hall joy, festivity*.

**sęle-ful**, n., *hall cup*.

**sęlesęcg**, m., *hall warrior, retainer*.

**sēlest**, *best* (no positive).  
**self** (**sylf**), *self, himself* (declined as strong or weak adjective).  
**seġlan** (**syllan**) (§ 128), *give* [sell, han(d)sel].  
**seġninga**, *forthwith, straightway*.  
**seġdan** (§ 127), *send*.  
**sēo**, see **sē**.  
**sēoc**, *sick*.  
**seofon** (**syfan**), *seven*.  
**seolh**, m., *seal*; gen. sing. = **sēoles** (§ 27, (3)).  
**sēon** (§ 118), *see, look*.  
**seonu**, f., *sinew*; nom. pl., **seonowe**.  
**sess**, m., *seat*.  
**sibb**, f., *friendship, peace* [gossip].  
**sidu** (**siodu**), m., *custom, morality, good conduct*.  
**sīe**, see **bēon**.  
**siex**, *six*;  
**syxa** (**siexa**) **sum**, see **sum**.  
**siextig**, *sixty*.  
**sige**, m., *victory*.  
**sige-folc**, n., *victorious people*.  
**sige-lēas**, *victory-less, of defeat*.  
**sige-rōf**, **victory-famed**, *victorious*.  
**sige-wāpen**, n., *victory-weapon*.  
**siglan** (§ 127), *sail*.  
**Sillende**, *Zealand*.  
**sinc**, n., *treasure, prize*.  
**sinc-fæt**, n., see 137, 1 [treasure-vat].  
**sinc-ðeġu**, f., *receiving of treasure* [**ðicgan**].  
**sind**, **sint**, **sindon**, see **bēon**.  
**singan** (§ 110), *sing*.  
**sittan** (§ 115, Note 2), *sit, take position*.  
**sīð**, m., *journey, time*;  
**forman sīðe** 139, 2 = *the first time* (instr. sing.).  
**sīðian** (§ 130), *journey*.  
**sīððan**, *after that, afterwards, after*.  
**slæp**, m., *sleep*.  
**slæpan** (§ 117), *sleep*.  
**slēan** (§ 118), *slay* [slow-worm].  
**slītan** (§ 102), *slit, tear to pieces*.  
**slīðen**, *savage, perilous*.  
**smæl**, *narrow*.  
**smalost**, see **smæl**.  
**snāw**, m., *snow*.  
**snot(t)or**, *wise, prudent*.  
**sōhte**, see **sēcan**.  
**somod** (**samod**), *together*.  
**sōna**, *soon*.  
**song**, m., n., *song, poem*.  
**songcræft**, m., *art of song and poetry*.  
**sorg** (**sorh**), f., *sorrow*.  
**sōð**, *true*.  
**sōð**, n., *truth*;  
**tō sōðe**, *for a truth, truly, verily*.  
**sōð-fæst**, *truthful, just*.  
**sōðlice**, *truly*.  
**spēd**, f., *possessions, success, riches* [speed].  
**spēdig**, *rich, prosperous*.  
**spell**, n., *story, tale* [gospel].  
**spēow**, see **spōwan**.  
**spere**, n., *spear*.  
**spor**, n., *track, footprint*.  
**spōwan** (§ 117), *succeed* (impersonal with dat.).  
**spræc**, f., *speech, language*.  
**sprecan** (§ 115), *speak*.  
**spyrian** (**spyrigean**) (§ 130), *follow* (intrans.) [**spor**].

**stæf**, *staff, rod*; pl. = *literature, learning*.  
**stælhƿān**, m., *decoy-reindeer*.  
**stælwierðe**, *serviceable* (see p. 56, Note 2).  
**stær**, n., *story, narrative* [Lat. *historia*].  
**stæð**, n., *shore*.  
**stān**, m., *stone, rock*.  
**stān-boga**, m., *stone-arch* [stone-bow].  
**standan**, see **stōndan**.  
**stānhlið (-hleoð)**, n., *stone-cliff*.  
**stapol**, m., *column* [staple].  
**starian** (§ 125), *stare, gaze*.  
**stede**, m., *place*.  
**stelan** (§ 114), *steal*.  
**stent**, see **stōndan**.  
**stēorbord**, n., *starboard, right side of a ship*.  
**steppan** (§ 116), *step, advance*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **stōp**.  
**stilnes**, f., *stillness, quiet*.  
**stōndan** (§ 116), *stand*.  
**stōp**, see **steppan**.  
**storm**, m., *storm*.  
**stōw**, f., *place* [stow, and in names of places].  
**strang**, see **strōng**.  
**strengest**, see **strōng**.  
**strōng** (§ 96, (2)), *strong*.  
**styccemælum**, *here and there*.  
**sum** (§ 91, Note 2), *some, certain, a certain one*;  
**hē syxa sum 104, 25** = *he with five others*.  
**sumera**, see **sumor**.  
**sumor**, m., *summer*; dat. sing. = **sumera**.  
**sumorlida**, m., *summer-army*.  
**sundor**, *apart*.  
**sunne**, f., *sun*.  
**sunu**, m., *son*.  
**sūð**, *south, southwards*.  
**sūðan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the south*;  
**be sūðan**, *south of* (§ 94, (4)).  
**sūðeward**, *southward*.  
**sūðryhte**, *southward*.  
**swā (swāe)**, *so, as, how, as if*;  
**swā swā**, *just as, as far as*;  
**swā ... swā**, *the ... the, as ... as*;  
**swā hwæt swā**, *whatsoever* (§ 77, Note).  
**swæs**, *beloved, own*.  
**swæð**, n., *track, footprint* [swath].  
**swaðul**, m.? n.?, *smoke*.  
**swealh**, see **swelgan**.  
**swefan** (§ 115), *sleep, sleep the sleep of death*.  
**swefn**, n., *sleep, dream*.  
**swēg**, m., *sound, noise*.  
**swegle**, *bright, clear*.  
**swēlan** (§ 126), *burn* [sweal].  
**swelgan** (§ 110), *swallow*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **swealh**; subj., **swulge**.  
**swellan** (§ 110), *swell*.  
**Swēoland**, n., *Sweden*.  
**Swēom**, m., dat. pl., *the Swedes*.  
**sweotol**, *clear*.  
**sweotole**, *clearly*.  
**swērian** (§ 116), *swear*.  
**swēte**, *sweet*.  
**swētnes (-nis)**, f., *sweetness*.  
**swift (swyft)**, *swift*.  
**swilc (swylc)** (§ 77), *such*.  
**swilce**, *in such manner, as, likewise; as if, as though* (with subj.).  
**swimman** (§ 110), *swim*.  
**swīn (swȳn)**, n., *swine, hog*.

**swīnsung**, f., *melody, harmony*.  
**swīðe (swyðe)**, *very, exceedingly, greatly*.  
**swīðost**, *chiefly, almost*.  
**swōr**, see **swęrian**.  
**swulge**, see **swelgan**.  
**swuster** (§ 68, (2)), f., *sister*.  
**swylce (swelce)**, see **swilce**.  
**swyñ**, see **swīn**.  
**swynsian** (§ 130), *resound*.  
**swyðe**, see **swīðe**.  
**swyð-ferhð**, *strong-souled*.  
**sylf**, see **self**.  
**syll**, f., *sill, floor*.  
**syllan**, see **sęllan**.  
**symbel**, n., *feast, banquet*.  
**symle**, *always*.  
**synd**, see **bēon**.  
**syn-dolh**, n., *ceaseless wound, incurable wound*.  
**syndriglice**, *specially*.  
**synn**, f., *sin*.  
**syn-scaða**, m., *ceaseless scather, perpetual foe*.  
**syn-snæd**, f., *huge bit* [ceaseless bit].  
**syððan**, see **siððan**.  
**syx**, see **siex**.  
**syxtig**, see **siextig**.

## T.

**tācen**, n., *sign, token*; dat. sing., **tācne** (§ 33, Note).  
**tācan** (§ 128), *teach*.  
**tam**, *tame*.  
**tela**, *properly, well* [til].  
**tęllan** (§ 128), *count, deem* [tell]; pret. 3d sing., **tealde**.  
**Tęmes**, f., *the Thames*.  
**tēon**, *arrange, create*; pret. sing., **tēode**.  
**Terfinna**, m., gen. pl., *the Terfins*.  
**tēð**, see **tōð**.  
**tīd**, f., *tide, time, hour*.  
**tīen (tȳn)**, *ten*.  
**til(l)**, *good*.  
**tīma**, m., *time*.  
**tintreglic**, *full of torment*.  
**tō** (§ 94, (1)), *to, for, according to, as*;  
**tō hrōfe** 114, 2 = *for (as) a roof* [cf. Biblical *to wife*, modern *to boot*].  
**tō**, adv., *too*.  
**tōbreca**n (p. 81, Note 2), *break to pieces, knock about*.  
**tōdāelan** (§ 126), *divide*.  
**tōemnes (tō emnes)** (§ 94, (4)), *along, alongside*.  
**tōforan** (§ 94, (1)), *before*.  
**tōgeðēodan** (§ 126), *join*.  
**tōhopa**, m., *hope*.  
**tōlicgan** (§ 115, Note 2), *separate, lie between*;  
 3d sing, indic. = **tōlið**.  
**tōlið**, see **tōlicgan**.  
**tōlūcan** (§ 109, Note 1), *destroy* [the prefix **tō** reverses the meaning of **lūcan**, *to lock*].  
**torn**, m., *anger, insult*.  
**tōð** (§ 68, (1)), m., *tooth*.  
**tōweard** (§ 94, (1)), *toward*.  
**tōweard**, adj., *approaching, future*.  
**trēow**, f., *pledge, troth*.  
**trēownes**, f., *trust*.  
**Trūsō**, *Drausen* (a city on the Drausensea).  
**tūn**, m., *town, village*.  
**tunge**, f., *tongue*.  
**tūngerēfa**, m., *bailiff* [town-reeve; so sheriff = shire-reeve].  
**tungol**, n., *star*.

**twā**, see **twēgen**.

**twēgen**, (§ 89), *two, twain*.

**twēntig**, *twenty*.

**tȳn**, see **tīen**.

## D.

**ðā**, *then, when*;

**ðā ... ðā**, *when ... then*;

**ðā ðā**, *then when = when*.

**ðā**, see **sē**.

**ðær**, *there, where*;

**ðær ðær**, *there where = where*;

**ðær ... swā** 142, 4 = *wheresoever*; 145, 6 = *if so be that*.

**ðæs**, *afterwards, therefore, thus, because*;

see **sē**.

**ðæt** (**ðætte** = **ðæt ðe**), *that, so that*.

**ðafian** (§ 130), *consent to*.

**ðanc**, see **ðonc**.

**ðancian** (**ðoncian**) (§ 130), *thank*.

**ðanon**, see **ðonan**.

**ðās**, see **ðēs**.

**ðē**, see **sē** (instr. sing.) and **ðū**.

**ðe** (§ 75), *who, whom, which, that*.

**ðēah**, *though, although*;

**ðēah ðe**, *though, although*.

**ðearf**, see **ðurfan**.

**ðearf**, f., *need, benefit*.

**ðēaw**, m., *habit, custom* [thews].

**ðegn** (**ðegen**), m., *servant,thane, warrior*.

**ðenc(e)an** (§ 128), *think, intend*.

**ðening** (**-ung**), f., *service*;

the pl. may mean *book of service* (117, 17).

**ðēod**, f., *people, nation*.

**ðēoden**, m., *prince, lord*.

**ðēodscipe**, m., *discipline*.

**ðeon** (**ðywan**) (§ 126), *oppress* [**ðēow**].

**ðēow**, m., *servant*.

**ðēowa**, m., *servant*.

**ðēowotdōm** (**ðīowot-**), m., *service*.

**ðēs** (§ 73), *this*.

**ðider**, *thither*.

**ðiderweard**, *thitherward*.

**ðīn** (§ 76), *thine*.

**ðing**, n., *thing*;

**ænige ðinga**, see 140, 15, Note.

**ðingan** (§ 127), *arrange, appoint*.

**ðis**, see **ðēs**.

**ðissum**, see **ðēs**.

**ðōhte**, **ðōhton**, see **ðencean**.

**ðolian** (§ 130), *endure* [thole].

**ðonan**, *thence*.

**ðonc**, m., *thanks*.

**ðone**, see **sē**.

**ðonne**, *than, then, when*;

**ðonne ... ðonne**, *when ... then*.

**ðrāg**, f., *time*.

**ðrēa-nȳd**, f., *compulsion, oppression, misery* [thro-e-need].

**ðrēora**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðridda**, *third*.

**ðrie** (**ðrȳ**) (§ 89), *three*.

**ðrīm**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðrist-hȳdig**, *bold-minded*.

**ðrītig**, *thirty*.

**ðrōwung**, f., *suffering*.

**ðrȳ**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðrym(m)**, m., *renown, glory, strength*.



**ðrȳð**, f., *power, multitude* (pl. used in sense of sing.);

**asca ðrȳðe** 152, 23 = *the might of spears*.

**ðrȳð-ærn**, n., *mighty house, noble hall*.

**ðrȳð-word**, n., *mighty word, excellent discourse*.

**ðū** (§ 72), *thou*.

**ðūhte**, see **ðyncan**.

**ðurfan** (§ 136), *need*; pres. indic. 3d sing., **ðearf**; pret. 3d sing., **ðorfte**;

**for-ðām mē witan ne ðearf Waldend fira morðor-bealo māga** 145, 17 = *therefore the Ruler of men need not charge me with the murder of kinsmen*.

**ðurh** (§ 94, (2)), *through*.

**ðus**, *thus*.

**ðūsend**, *thousand*.

**ðȳ**, see **sē**.

**ðyder**, see **ðider**.

**ðyncan** (§ 128), *seem, appear* (impersonal);

**mē ðyncō**, *methinks, it seems to me*;

**him ðūhte**, *it seemed to him*.

## U.

**ūhta**, m., *dawn*; gen. pl., **ūhtna**.

**unbeboht**, *unsold* [**bebycgan** = *to sell*].

**uncūð**, *unknown, uncertain* [uncouth].

**under**, *under* (with dat. and acc.).

**understōndan** (§ 116), *understand*.

**underðēodan (-ðīedan)** (§ 126), *subject to*; past part. **underðēoded** = *subjected to, obedient to* (with dat.).

**unforbærned**, *unburned*.

**unfrið**, m., *hostility*.

**ungefōge**, *excessively*.

**ungemete**, *immeasurably, very*.

**ungesewenlic**, *invisible* [past part. of **sēon** + **lic**].

**unlyfigend**, *dead, dead man* [unliving].

**unlȳtel**, *no little, great*.

**unriht**, n., *wrong*;

**on unriht**, see **on**.

**unrihtwīsnes**, f., *unrighteousness*.

**unspēdig**, *poor*.

**unwearnum**, *unawares*.

**ūp (ūpp)**, *up*.

**ūpāstignes**, f., *ascension* [**stīgan**].

**ūp-lang**, *upright*.

**ūre** (§ 76), *our*.

**usses** = gen. sing. neut. of **ūser**, see **ic**.

**ūt**, *out, outside*.

**ūtan**, *from without, outside*.

**ūtanbordes**, *abroad*.

**ūtgong**, m., *exodus*.

**uton**, *let us* (with infin.) [literally *let us go* with infin. of purpose (see 137, 19-20, Note); **uton** = **wuton**, corrupted form of 1st pl. subj. of **wītan**, *to go*].

**ūt-weard**, *outward bound, moving outwards*.

## W.

**wāc**, *weak, insignificant*.

**wacian** (§ 130), *watch, be on guard*; imperative sing., **waca**.

**wadan** (§ 116), *go, tread* [wade].

**wæg**, m., *wave*.

**Wægmundigas**, m. *Wægmundings* (family to which Beowulf and Wiglaf belonged).

**wæl**, n., *slaughter, the slain*.

**wæl-blēat**, *deadly* [slaughter-pitiful].

**wælgifre**, *greedy for slaughter*.

**wæl-ræs**, m., *mortal combat* [slaughter-race].

**wæl-rēow**, *fierce in strife*.

**wælsliht (-sleht)**, m., *slaughter*.

**wælstōw**, f., *battle-field* [slaughter-place];

**wælstōwe gewald**, *possession of the battle-field*.

**wæpen**, n., *weapon*.

**wære**, see **bēon**.  
**wæs**, see **bēon**.  
**wæter**, n., *water*.  
**waldend**, see *wealdend*.  
**wan (wōn)**, *wan, dark*.  
**wanhȳdig**, *heedless, rash*.  
**wānigean (wānian)** (§ 130), *bewail, lament* (trans.) [*whine*].  
**warian** (§ 130), *attend, accompany*.  
**wāt**, see **witan**.  
**waðum**, m., *wave*; gen. pl., **waðema**.  
**weal(l)**, m., *wall, rampart*.  
**wealdend** (§ 68, (3)), *wielder, ruler, lord*.  
**wealh**, m., *foreigner, Welshman*.  
**wealhstōd**, m., *interpreter, translator*.  
**weallan** (§ 117), *well up, boil, be agitated*; pret. 3d. sing. indic., **wēoll**.  
**wealsteal(l)**, m., *wall-place, foundation*.  
**weard**, m., *ward, keeper*.  
**wearð**, see **weorðan**.  
**weaxan** (§ 117), *wax, grow*.  
**weg**, m., *way*;  
**hys weg**, see § 93, (3);  
**on weg**, see **on**.  
**wel(l)**, *well, readily*.  
**wela**, m., *weal, prosperity, riches*.  
**welm**, see **wielm**.  
**wēnan** (§ 126), *ween, think, expect*.  
**węndan** (§ 127), *change, translate* [*wend, windan*].  
**węnian** (§ 130), *entertain*;  
**węnian mid wynum** 149, 20 = *entertain joyfully*;  
**węnede tō wiste** 149, 27 = *feasted* (trans.).  
**Weonodland (Weonoðland)**, n., *Wendland*.  
**weorc**, n., *work, deed*.  
**weorold (weoruld)**, see **woruld**.  
**weorpan** (§ 110), *throw*.  
**weorðan** (§ 110), *be, become*.  
**wer**, m., *man* [*werwulf*].  
**wērig**, *wearry, dejected*.  
**werod**, n., *army, band*.  
**wesan**, see **bēon**.  
**Wesseaxe**, m. pl., *West Saxons*; gen. pl. = **Wesseaxna**.  
**west**, *west, westward*.  
**westanwind**, m., *west wind*.  
**wēste**, *waste*.  
**wēsten**, n., *waste, desert*.  
**Westsæ**, f., *West Sea* (west of Norway).  
**Westseaxe**, m. pl., *West Saxons, Wessex*.  
**wīc**, n., *dwelling* [*bailiwick*].  
**wīcian** (§ 130), *stop, lodge, sojourn* [**wīc**].  
**wīdre**, adv., *farther, more widely* (comparative of **wīde**).  
**wīdsæ**, f., *open sea*.  
**wielm (welme)**, m., *welling, surging flood* [**weallan**].  
**wīf**, n., *wife, woman*.  
**wīg**, m., n., *war, battle*.  
**wiga**, m., *warrior*.  
**wild**, *wild*.  
**wildor**, n., *wild beast, reindeer*; dat. pl. = **wildrum** (§ 33, Note).  
**willa**, m., *will, pleasure*; gen. pl., **wilna** (138, 16).  
**willan** (§ 134; § 137, Note 3), *will, intend, desire*.  
**wilnung**, f., *wish, desire*;  
**for ðære wilnunga** 119, 4 = *purposely*.  
**Wiltūn**, m., *Wilton* (in Wiltshire).  
**wīn**, n., *wine*.  
**wīn-ærn**, n., *wine-hall*.  
**Wīnburne**, f., *Wimborne* (in Dorsetshire).  
**wind**, m., *wind*.

**wine**, m., *friend*.

**Winedas**, m. pl., *the Wends, the Wend country*.

**wine-dryhten**, m., *friendly lord*.

**winelēas**, *friendless*.

**winemæg**, m., *friendly kinsman*.

**wīngeard**, m., *vineyard*.

**winnan** (§ 110), *strive, fight* [win].

**wīnsæl**, n., *wine-hall*.

**wīn-sele**, m., *wine-hall*.

**winter**, m., *winter*; dat. sing. = **wīntra**.

**wintercearig**, *winter-sad, winter-worn*.

**wīs**, *wise*.

**wīsdōm**, m., *wisdom*.

**wīse**, *wisely*.

**wīse**, f., *manner, matter, affair* [in this wise].

**wīs-fæst**, *wise* [wise-fast; cf. shame-faced = shamefast].

**wīs-hycgende**, *wise-thinking*.

**Wīse**, f., *the Vistula*.

**Wīsemūða**, m., *the mouth of the Vistula*.

**wisse**, see **witan**.

**wist**, f., *food, feast*.

**wita**, m., *wise man, councillor*.

**witan** (§ 136), *know, show, experience*.

**wītan** (§ 102), *reproach, blame* (with acc. of thing, dat. of person).

**wīte**, n., *punishment*.

**Wītland**, n., *Witland* (in Prussia).

**wið** (§ 94, (3)), *against, toward, with*;

**wið ēastan and wið ūpp on emnlange ðæm bȳnum lande**, *toward the east, and upwards along the cultivated land*;

**wið earm gesæt 139, 11** = *supported himself on his arm*;

**genereð wið niðe** (dat.) **143, 11** = *had preserved it from (against) violence*.

**wiðerwinna**, m., *adversary*.

**wiðfōn** (§ 118), *grapple with* (with dat.).

**wiðhabban** (§ 133), *withstand, resist* (with dat.).

**wiðstōndan** (§ 116), *withstand, resist* (with dat.).

**wlōnc**, *proud*.

**wōd**, see **wadan**.

**wolcen**, n., *cloud* [welkin]; dat. pl., **wolcnum**.

**wolde**, see **willan**.

**wōma**, m., *noise, alarm, terror*.

**wōn**, see **wan**.

**wōp**, n., *weeping*.

**word**, n., *word*.

**wōrian** (§ 130), *totter, crumble*.

**worn**, m., *large number, multitude*.

**woruld**, f., *world*;

**tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ende 102, 18** = *world without end*.

**woruldcund**, *worldly, secular*.

**woruldhād**, m., *secular life* [world-hood].

**woruldrīce**, n., *world-kingdom, world*.

**woruldōing**, n., *worldly affair*.

**wræclāst**, m., *track or path of an exile*.

**wrāð**, *wroth, angry; foe, enemy*.

**wrītan** (§ 102), *write*.

**wucu**, f., *week*.

**wudu**, m., *wood, forest*.

**wuldor**, n., *glory*.

**Wuldorfæder** (§ 68, (2)), m., *Father of glory*; gen. sing., **Wuldorfæder**.

**Wuldur-cyning**, m., *King of glory*.

**wulf**, m., *wolf*.

**wund**, f., *wound*.

**wund**, *wounded*.

**wunden**, *twisted, woven, convolute* (past part. of **wīndan**).

**wundor**, n., *wonder, marvel*.

**wundrian** (§ 130), *wonder at* (with gen.).

**wurdon**, see **weorðan**.  
**wurðan**, see **weorðan**.  
**wylf**, f., *she wolf*.  
**wyllað**, see **willan**.  
**wyn-lēas**, *joyless*.  
**wynn**, f., *joy, delight*.  
**wynsum**, *winsome, delightful*.  
**wyrc(e)an** (§ 128), *work, make, compose*.  
**wyrd**, f., *weird, fate, destiny*.  
**wyrhta**, m., *worker, creator* [-wright].  
**wyrm**, m., *worm, dragon, serpent*.  
**wyrmlica**, m., *serpentine ornamentation*.  
**wyrð** (**weorð**), *worthy*; see 114, 7-9, Note.

187b

## Y.

**ylca**, see **ilca**.  
**yldan** (§ 127), *delay, postpone* [**eald**].  
**yldu**, f., *age* [eld].  
**ymbe** (**ymb**) (§ 94, (2)), *about, around, concerning* [*umwhile*];  
**ðæs ymb iii niht 99, 2** = *about three nights afterwards*.  
**ymb-ēode**, see **ymb-gān**.  
**ymbe-sittend**, *one who sits (dwells) round about another, neighbor*.  
**ymb-gān** (§ 134), *go about, go around, circle* (with acc.).  
**yrfe-weard**, m., *heir*.  
**yrnan**, see **iernan**.  
**yrre**, *ireful, angry*.  
**yteren**, *of an otter* [*otor*].  
**ȳðan** (§ 126), *lay waste* (as by a deluge) [**ȳð** = *wave*].

188

## II. GLOSSARY.



### MODERN ENGLISH—OLD ENGLISH.

A B C D E F G H I K L  
M N O P Q R S T V W Y

## A.

**a**, *ān* (§ 77).  
**abide**, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.  
**about**, *be* (§ 94, (1)), *ymbe* (§ 94, (2));  
**to write about**, *writan be*;  
**to speak about** (= **of**), *sprecan ymbe*;  
**about two days afterwards**, *ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas*.  
**adder**, *nædre* (§ 64).  
**afterwards**, *ðæs* (§ 93, (3)).  
**against**, *wið* (§ 94, (3)), *on* (§ 94, (3)).  
**Alfred**, *Ælfred* (§ 26).  
**all**, *eall* (§ 80).  
**also**, *ēac*.  
**although**, *ðēah* (§ 105, 2).  
**always**, *ā*; *ealne weg* (§ 98, (1)).  
**am**, *eom* (§ 40).  
**an**, see **a**.  
**and**, *and* (*and*).  
**angel**, *engel* (§ 26).  
**animal**, *dēor* (§ 32).  
**are**, *sind, sint, sindon* (§ 40).  
**army**, *werod* (§ 32);  
**Danish army**, *hære* (§ 26);  
**English army**, *fīerd* (§ 38).  
**art**, *eart* (§ 40).  
**Ashdown**, *Æscesdūn* (§ 38).

away, *aweg*.**B.****battle-field**, *wælstōw* (§ 38).**be**, *bēon* (§ 40);**not to be**, see § 40, Note 2.**bear**, *beran* (§ 114).**because**, for *ðǣm* (*ðe*), for *ðon* (*ðe*).**become**, *weorðan* (§ 110).**before** (temporal conjunction), *ǣr*, *ǣr ðǣm ðe* (§ 105, 2).**begin**, *onginnan* (§ 107, (1); § 110).**belong to**, *belimpan tō* + dative (§ 110).**best**, see **good**.**better**, see **good**.**bind**, *bindan* (§ 110).**bird**, *fugol* (§ 26).**bite**, *bītan* (§ 102).**body**, *līc* (§ 32).**bone**, *bān* (§ 32).**book**, *bōc* (§ 68).**both ... and**, *ǣgðer ge ... ge*.**boundary**, *mearc* (§ 38).**boy**, *cnapa* (§ 64).**break**, *brēotan* (§ 109), *brecan*, *ābrecan* (§ 114).

190

**brother**, *brōðor* (§ 68, (2)).**but**, *ac*.**by**, *frōm* (*fram*) (§ 94, (1); § 141, Note 1).**C.****Cædmon**, *Cædmōn* (§ 68, (1)).**call**, *hātan* (§ 117, (1)).**cease, cease from**, *geswīcan* (§ 102).**child**, *bearn* (§ 32).**choose**, *cēosan* (§ 109).**Christ**, *Crīst* (§ 26).**church**, *cirice* (§ 64).**come**, *cuman* (§ 114).**comfort**, *frōfor* (§ 38).**companion**, *gefēra* (§ 64).**consolation**, *frōfor* (§ 38).**create**, *gescieppan* (§ 116).**D.****Danes**, *Dene* (§ 47).**day**, *dæg* (§ 26).**dead**, *dēad* (§ 80).**dear** (= **beloved**), *lēof* (§ 80).**deed**, *dǣd* (§ 38).**die**, *cwelan* (§ 114).**division** (of troops), *gefylce* (§ 32), *getruma* (§ 64).**do**, *dōn* (§ 134).**door**, *dor* (§ 32), *duru* (§ 52).**drink**, *drincan* (§ 110).**during**, *on* (§ 94, (3)). See also § 98. **dwell in**, *būan on* (§ 126, Note 2).

190b

**E.****earl**, *eorl* (§ 26).**endure**, *drēogan* (§ 109).**England**, *Ēnglald* (§ 32).**enjoy**, *brūcan* (§ 62, Note 1; § 109, Note 1).**every**, *ǣlc* (§ 77).**eye**, *ēage* (§ 64).

## F.

**father**, *fæder* (§ 68, (2)).  
**field**, *feld* (§ 51).  
**fight**, *feohtan*, *gefeohtan* (§ 110).  
**find**, *findan* (§ 110).  
**finger**, *finger* (§ 26).  
**fire**, *fȳr* (§ 32).  
**fisherman**, *fiscere* (§ 26).  
**foreigner**, *wealh* (§ 26).  
**freedom**, *frēodōm* (§ 26).  
**friend**, *wine* (§ 45), *frēond* (§ 68, (3)).  
**friendship**, *frēondscipe* (§ 45).  
**full**, *full* (with genitive) (§ 80).

## G.

**gain the victory**, *sige habban*, *sige niman*.  
**gift**, *giefu* (§ 38).  
**give**, *giefan* (with dative of indirect object) (§ 115).  
**glad**, *glæd* (§ 81).  
**glove**, *glōf* (§ 38).  
**go**, *gān* (§ 134), *faran* (§ 116).  
**God**, *God* (§ 26).  
**good**, *gōd* (§ 80).

## H.

**Halgoland**, *Hālgoland* (§ 32).  
**hall**, *heall* (§ 38).  
**hand**, *hond* (§ 52).  
**hard**, *heard* (§ 80).  
**have**, *habban* (§ 34);  
    **not to have**, *nabban* (p. 32, Note).  
**he**, *hē* (§ 53).  
**head**, *hēafod* (§ 32).  
**hear**, *hieran* (§ 126).  
**heaven**, *heofon* (§ 26).  
**help**, *helpan* (with dative) (§ 110).  
**herdsman**, *hierde* (§ 26).  
**here**, *hēr*.  
**hither**, *hider*.  
**hold**, *healdan* (§ 117, (2)).  
**holy**, *hālig* (§ 82).  
**horse**, *mearh* (§ 26), *hors* (§ 32).  
**house**, *hūs* (§ 32).

## I.

**I**, *ic* (§ 72).  
**in**, *on* (§ 94, (3)).  
**indeed**, *sōðlice*.  
**injure**, *sceððan* (with dative) (§ 116).  
**it**, *hit* (§ 53).

## K.

**king**, *cyning* (§ 26).  
**kingdom**, *rīce* (§ 32), *cynerīce* (§ 32).

## L.

**land**, *lond* (§ 32).  
**language**, *spræc* (§ 38), *geðēode* (§ 32).  
**large**, *micel* (§ 82).  
**leisure**, *æmetta* (§ 64).  
**let us**, *uton* (with infinitive).  
**limb**, *lim* (§ 32).  
**little**, *lytel* (§ 82).  
**live in**, *būan on* (§ 126, Note 2).

**lord**, *hlāford* (§ 26).  
**love**, *lufian* (§ 131).  
**love** (noun), *lufu* (§ 38).

### M.

**make**, *wyrčan* (§ 128).  
**man**, *seċg* (§ 26), *mōn* (§ 68, (1)).  
**many**, *mōnig* (§ 82).  
**mare**, *mýre* (§ 64).  
**mead**, *medu* (§ 51).  
**Mercians**, *Mierce* (§ 47).  
**milk**, *meolc* (§ 38).  
**month**, *mōnað* (§ 68, (1), Note 1).  
**mouth**, *mūð* (§ 26).  
**much**, *micel* (§ 96, (3)), *micle* (§ 97, (2)).  
**murderer**, *bōna* (§ 64).  
**my**, *mīn* (§ 76).

### N.

**natives**, *lōndlēode* (§ 47).  
**nephew**, *nefa* (§ 64).  
**new**, *nīwe* (§ 82).  
**Northumbrians**, *Norðymbre* (§ 47).  
**not**, *ne*.

### O.

**of**, see **about**.  
**on**, *on* (§ 94, (3)), *ofer* (§ 94, (2)).  
**one**, *ān* (§ 89);  
**the one ... the other**, *ōðer ... oðer*.  
**other**, *oðer* (§ 77).  
**our**, *ūre* (§ 76).  
**ox**, *oxa* (§ 64).

### P.

**place**, *stōw* (§ 38).  
**plundering**, *heġung* (§ 38).  
**poor**, *earm* (§ 80), *unspēdig* (§ 82).  
**prosperous**, *spēdig* (§ 82).

### Q.

**queen**, *cwēn* (§ 49).

### R.

**reindeer**, *hrān* (§ 26).  
**remain**, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.  
**retain possession of the battle-field**, *āgan wælstōwe gewald*.  
**rich**, *rīce* (§ 82), *spēdig* (§ 82).  
**ride**, *rīdan* (§ 102).

### S.

**say**, *cweðan* (§ 115), *seċgan* (§ 133).  
**scribe**, *bōcere* (§ 26).  
**seal**, *seolh* (§ 26).  
**see**, *sēon* (§ 118), *gesēon*.  
**serpent**, *nædre* (§ 64).  
**servant**, *ðēowa* (§ 64), *ðegn* (§ 26).  
**shall**, *sculan* (§ 136; § 137, Note 2).  
**she**, *hēo* (§ 53).  
**shepherd**, *hierde* (§ 26).  
**ship**, *scip* (§ 32).  
**shire**, *scīr* (§ 38).  
**shoemaker**, *scēowyrhta* (§ 64).  
**side, on both sides**, *on gehwæðre hōnd*.

**six**, *siex* (§ 90).  
**slaughter**, *wæl* (§ 32), *wælsliht* (§ 45).  
**small**, *lytel* (§ 82).  
**son**, *sunu* (§ 51).  
**soul**, *sāwol* (§ 38).  
**speak**, *sprecan* (§ 115).  
**spear**, *gār* (§ 26), *spere* (§ 32).  
**stand**, *stōndan* (§ 116).  
**stone**, *stān* (§ 26).  
**stranger**, *wealh* (§ 26), *cuma* (§ 64).  
**suffer**, *drēogan* (§ 109).  
**sun**, *sunne* (§ 64).  
**swift**, *swift* (§ 80).

192b

## T.

**take**, *niman* (§ 110).  
**than**, *ðonne* (§ 96, (6)).  
**thane**, *ðegn* (§ 26).  
**that** (conjunction), *ðæt*.  
**that** (demonstrative), *sē, sēo, ðæt* (§ 28).  
**that** (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).  
**the**, *se, sēo, ðæt* (§ 28).  
**then**, *ðā, ðonne*.  
**these**, see **this**.  
**they**, *hīe* (§ 53).  
**thing**, *ðing* (§ 32).  
**thirty**, *ðrītig*.  
**this**, *ðēs, ðeos, ðis* (§ 73).  
**those**, see **that** (demonstrative).  
**thou**, *ðū* (§ 72).  
**though**, *ðēah* (§ 105, 2).  
**three**, *ðrīe* (§ 89).  
**throne, ascend the throne**, *tō rīce fōn*.  
**throw**, *weorpan* (§ 110).  
**to**, *tō* (§ 94, (1)).  
**tongue**, *tunge* (§ 64).  
**track**, *spor* (§ 32).  
**true**, *sōð* (§ 80).  
**truly**, *sōðlice*.  
**two**, *twēgen* (§ 89).

## V.

**very**, *swīðe*.  
**vessel**, *fæt* (§ 32).  
**victory**, *sige* (§ 45).

193

## W.

**wall**, *weall* (§ 26).  
**warrior**, *sęcg* (§ 26), *eorl* (§ 26).  
**way**, *weg* (§ 26).  
**weapon**, *wāpen* (§ 32).  
**well**, *wel* (§ 97, (2)).  
**Welshman**, *Wealh* (§ 26).  
**went**, see **go**.  
**westward**, *west, westrihte*.  
**whale**, *hwæl* (§ 26).  
**what?** *hwæt* (§ 74).  
**when**, *ðā, ðonne*.  
**where?** *hwær*.  
**which**, *ðe* (§ 75).  
**who?** *hwā* (§ 74).  
**who** (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).  
**whosoever**, *swā hwā swā* (§ 77, Note).  
**will**, *willan* (§ 134; § 137, Note 3).



**Wilton**, *Wiltūn* (§ 26).

**win**, see **gain**.

**wine**, *wīn* (§ 32).

**wisdom**, *wīsdōm* (§ 26).

**wise**, *wīs* (§ 80).

**with**, *mid* (§ 94, (1));

**to fight with** (= **against**), *gefeohtan wið* (§ 94, (3)).

**withstand**, *wiðstōndan* (with dative) (§ 116).

**wolf**, *wulf* (§ 26), *wylf* (§ 38).

**woman**, *wīf* (§ 32).

**word**, *word* (§ 32).

**worm**, *wyrm* (§ 45).

**Y.**

**ye**, *gē* (§ 72).

**year**, *gēar* (§ 32).

**yoke**, *geoc* (§ 32).

**you**, *ðū* (singular), *gē* (plural) (§ 72).

**your**, *ðīn* (singular), *ēower* (plural) (§ 76).

[Page 109,7: linenote](#)

vi	v	iv	iii	ii	i		1	2	3	4	5	6	
							X						
							XX	X	X				
							XXX	XX	XX	X	X		
-----								XXXX	XXX	XXX	XX	XX	X
e	d							c	b				
_	_							_	_	_	_	_	
Where the horsemen assemble.							The six parts of the property placed within one mile.						

\*\*\* END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK \*\*\*

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg™ License available with this file or online at [www.gutenberg.org/license](http://www.gutenberg.org/license).

**Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works**

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg™ electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg™ electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg™ electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg™ works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg™ name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg™ License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg™ work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg™ License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg™ work (any work on which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg™ trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg™ License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg™ License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg™.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg™ work in a format other than "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg™ website ([www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg™ License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg™ works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project

Gutenberg™ electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg™ works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

#### 1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg™ work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg™ work, and (c) any

Defect you cause.

## **Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg™**

Project Gutenberg™ is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg™'s goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg™ collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg™ and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

## **Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation**

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at [www.gutenberg.org/contact](http://www.gutenberg.org/contact)

## **Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation**

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate).

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate)

## **Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg™ electronic works**

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg™ concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg™ eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg™ eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg™, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.